



# SEV Secure Nested Paging Firmware ABI Specification

|               |                    |           |             |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------|
| Publication # | <b>56860</b>       | Revision: | <b>1.59</b> |
| Issue Date:   | <b>August 2026</b> |           |             |

## **Specification Agreement**

This Specification Agreement (this “Agreement”) is a legal agreement between Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. (“AMD”) and “You” as the recipient of the attached AMD Specification (the “Specification”). If you are accessing the Specification as part of your performance of work for another party, you acknowledge that you have authority to bind such party to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If you accessed the Specification by any means or otherwise use or provide Feedback (defined below) on the Specification, You agree to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement. If You do not agree to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement, you are not licensed to use the Specification; do not use, access or provide Feedback about the Specification.

In consideration of Your use or access of the Specification (in whole or in part), the receipt and sufficiency of which are acknowledged, You agree as follows:

1. You may review the Specification only (a) as a reference to assist You in planning and designing Your product, service or technology (“Product”) to interface with an AMD product in compliance with the requirements as set forth in the Specification and (b) to provide Feedback about the information disclosed in the Specification to AMD.
2. Except as expressly set forth in Paragraph 1, all rights in and to the Specification are retained by AMD. This Agreement does not give You any rights under any AMD patents, copyrights, trademarks or other intellectual property rights. You may not (i) duplicate any part of the Specification; (ii) remove this Agreement or any notices from the Specification, or (iii) give any part of the Specification, or assign or otherwise provide Your rights under this Agreement, to anyone else.
3. The Specification may contain preliminary information, errors, or inaccuracies, or may not include certain necessary information. Additionally, AMD reserves the right to discontinue or make changes to the Specification and its products at any time without notice. The Specification is provided entirely “AS IS.” AMD MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND AND DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED AND STATUTORY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT, TITLE OR THOSE WARRANTIES ARISING AS A COURSE OF DEALING OR CUSTOM OF TRADE. AMD SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (INCLUDING LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF INFORMATION OR DATA, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF CAPITAL, LOSS OF GOODWILL) REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) AND STRICT PRODUCT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.
4. Furthermore, AMD’s products are not designed, intended, authorized or warranted for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, or in other applications intended to support or sustain life, or in any other application in which the failure of AMD’s product could create a situation where personal injury, death, or severe property or environmental damage may occur.
5. You have no obligation to give AMD any suggestions, comments or feedback (“Feedback”) relating to the Specification. However, any Feedback You voluntarily provide may be used by AMD without restriction, fee or obligation of confidentiality. Accordingly, if You do give AMD Feedback on any version of the Specification, You agree AMD may freely use, reproduce, license, distribute, and otherwise commercialize Your Feedback in any product, as well as has the right to sublicense third parties to do the same. Further, You will not give AMD any Feedback that You may have reason to believe is (i) subject to any patent, copyright or other intellectual property claim or right of any third party; or (ii) subject to license terms which seek to require any product or intellectual property incorporating or derived from Feedback or any Product or other AMD intellectual property to be licensed to or otherwise provided to any third party.
6. You shall adhere to all applicable U.S., European, and other export laws, including but not limited to the U.S. Export Administration Regulations (“EAR”), (15 C.F.R. Sections 730 through 774), and E.U. Council Regulation (EC) No 428/2009 of 5 May 2009. Further, pursuant to Section 740.6 of the EAR, You hereby certifies that, except pursuant to a license granted by the United States Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security or as otherwise permitted pursuant to a License Exception under the U.S. Export Administration Regulations (“EAR”), You will not (1) export, re-export or release to a national of a country in Country Groups D:1, E:1 or E:2 any restricted technology,

software, or source code You receive hereunder, or (2) export to Country Groups D:1, E:1 or E:2 the direct product of such technology or software, if such foreign produced direct product is subject to national security controls as identified on the Commerce Control List (currently found in Supplement 1 to Part 774 of EAR). For the most current Country Group listings, or for additional information about the EAR or Your obligations under those regulations, please refer to the U.S. Bureau of Industry and Security's website at <http://www.bis.doc.gov/>.

7. If You are a part of the U.S. Government, then the Specification is provided with "RESTRICTED RIGHTS" as set forth in subparagraphs (c) (1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software-Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.227-14 or subparagraph (c) (1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.277-7013, as applicable.

8. This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of California without regard to its choice of law principles. Any dispute involving it must be brought in a court having jurisdiction of such dispute in Santa Clara County, California, and You waive any defenses and rights allowing the dispute to be litigated elsewhere. If any part of this agreement is unenforceable, it will be considered modified to the extent necessary to make it enforceable, and the remainder shall continue in effect. The failure of AMD to enforce any rights granted hereunder or to take action against You in the event of any breach hereunder shall not be deemed a waiver by AMD as to subsequent enforcement of rights or subsequent actions in the event of future breaches. This Agreement is the entire agreement between You and AMD concerning the Specification; it may be changed only by a written document signed by both You and an authorized representative of AMD.

© 2024–2026 Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. All rights reserved.

The information contained herein is for informational purposes only, and is subject to change without notice. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, it may contain technical inaccuracies, omissions and typographical errors, and AMD is under no obligation to update or otherwise correct this information. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this document, and assumes no liability of any kind, including the implied warranties of noninfringement, merchantability or fitness for particular purposes, with respect to the operation or use of AMD hardware, software or other products described herein. No license, including implied or arising by estoppel, to any intellectual property rights is granted by this document. Terms and limitations applicable to the purchase or use of AMD's products are as set forth in a signed agreement between the parties or in AMD's Standard Terms and Conditions of Sale.

---

## **Trademarks**

AMD, the AMD Arrow logo, AMD EPYC, and combinations thereof are trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. Other product names used in this publication are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

# Contents

---

|                  |                                               |           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>Introduction.....</b>                      | <b>25</b> |
| 1.1              | Purpose.....                                  | 25        |
| 1.2              | Scope.....                                    | 25        |
| 1.3              | Intended Audience .....                       | 25        |
| 1.4              | References.....                               | 25        |
| <b>Chapter 2</b> | <b>Data Structures and Encodings .....</b>    | <b>26</b> |
| 2.1              | Metadata Entries (MDATA).....                 | 26        |
| 2.2              | VCEK.....                                     | 27        |
| 2.3              | TCB_VERSION .....                             | 27        |
| 2.4              | ETCB_VERSION .....                            | 28        |
| 2.5              | Invalid Physical Address (PADDR_INVALID)..... | 30        |
| 2.6              | TPM_INFO .....                                | 30        |
| <b>Chapter 3</b> | <b>Platform Management.....</b>               | <b>32</b> |
| 3.1              | Feature Detection and Enablement .....        | 32        |
| 3.2              | Platform State Machine .....                  | 32        |
| 3.3              | Firmware Updates.....                         | 33        |
| 3.4              | Reported TCB .....                            | 34        |
| 3.5              | Mitigation Status.....                        | 34        |
| 3.5.1            | Guest Mitigation Status.....                  | 34        |
| 3.5.2            | Host Mitigation Status .....                  | 35        |
| 3.6              | Chip Key Masking.....                         | 35        |
| 3.7              | Versioned Loaded Endorsement Key .....        | 36        |
| 3.8              | dTPM Binding to Guest Attestation .....       | 36        |
| 3.8.1            | dTPM EK Fingerprint.....                      | 36        |
| 3.8.2            | Trusted Boot.....                             | 37        |
| 3.8.3            | Guest Attestation.....                        | 37        |
| 3.8.4            | Binding Guest Attestation to TPM EK .....     | 37        |
| 3.9              | Extended TCB.....                             | 38        |
| 3.9.1            | Solution .....                                | 38        |
| <b>Chapter 4</b> | <b>Guest Management .....</b>                 | <b>40</b> |

---

|                  |                                                   |           |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 4.1              | Guest Context.....                                | 40        |
|                  | Live Update .....                                 | 42        |
| 4.2              | Guest State Machine.....                          | 42        |
| 4.3              | Guest Policy .....                                | 43        |
| 4.4              | Guest Activation.....                             | 44        |
| 4.5              | Launching a Guest.....                            | 45        |
| 4.6              | Identity Block.....                               | 45        |
| 4.7              | Decommissioning a Guest.....                      | 46        |
| 4.8              | Guest Messages .....                              | 46        |
| 4.9              | Remote Attestation.....                           | 46        |
| 4.10             | Guest Keys .....                                  | 46        |
| 4.11             | Migration.....                                    | 47        |
| 4.12             | Guest-Assisted Migration.....                     | 47        |
| 4.13             | Feature Discovery .....                           | 47        |
| <b>Chapter 5</b> | <b>Page Management .....</b>                      | <b>51</b> |
| 5.1              | Page Security Attributes.....                     | 51        |
| 5.2              | RMP Initialization.....                           | 51        |
| 5.2.1            | Non-Segmented RMP .....                           | 52        |
| 5.2.2            | Segmented RMP .....                               | 53        |
| 5.3              | Page States.....                                  | 55        |
| 5.3.1            | Page State Transitions .....                      | 56        |
| 5.3.2            | RMPUPDATE.....                                    | 57        |
| 5.3.3            | PVALIDATE .....                                   | 57        |
| 5.3.4            | Additional Page Management x86 Instructions ..... | 58        |
| 5.3.5            | Page Management Commands .....                    | 58        |
| 5.3.6            | Launch Commands.....                              | 58        |
| 5.3.7            | Guest Request Commands .....                      | 58        |
| 5.3.8            | Platform Commands.....                            | 58        |
| 5.3.9            | SEV Legacy Commands .....                         | 58        |
| 5.4              | Metadata Entries.....                             | 59        |
| <b>Chapter 6</b> | <b>Mailbox Protocol .....</b>                     | <b>61</b> |
| 6.1              | Command Identifier .....                          | 61        |

|                  |                                     |           |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 6.2              | Status Codes.....                   | 62        |
| <b>Chapter 7</b> | <b>Guest Messages.....</b>          | <b>65</b> |
| 7.1              | CPUID Reporting .....               | 65        |
| 7.2              | Key Derivation.....                 | 67        |
| 7.3              | Attestation.....                    | 70        |
| 7.4              | VM Export .....                     | 75        |
| 7.5              | VM Import .....                     | 78        |
| 7.6              | VM Absorb .....                     | 78        |
| 7.7              | VM Absorb – No Migration Agent..... | 78        |
| 7.8              | VMRK Message .....                  | 80        |
| 7.9              | TSC Info .....                      | 81        |
| 7.10             | Get CSR .....                       | 82        |
| 7.11             | Get TPM Info.....                   | 82        |
| <b>Chapter 8</b> | <b>Command Reference .....</b>      | <b>84</b> |
| 8.1              | DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE .....             | 84        |
| 8.2              | DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX.....           | 84        |
| 8.2.1            | Parameters.....                     | 84        |
| 8.2.2            | Actions .....                       | 85        |
| 8.2.3            | Status Codes.....                   | 86        |
| 8.3              | SNP_COMMIT.....                     | 87        |
| 8.3.1            | Actions .....                       | 87        |
| 8.3.2            | Status Codes.....                   | 87        |
| 8.4              | GET_ID .....                        | 87        |
| 8.5              | SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS.....            | 88        |
| 8.5.1            | Parameters.....                     | 88        |
| 8.5.2            | Actions .....                       | 88        |
| 8.5.3            | Status Codes.....                   | 90        |
| 8.6              | SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX .....        | 90        |
| 8.6.1            | Parameters.....                     | 90        |
| 8.6.2            | Actions .....                       | 91        |
| 8.6.3            | Status Codes.....                   | 93        |
| 8.7              | SNP_CONFIG .....                    | 93        |

|        |                        |     |
|--------|------------------------|-----|
| 8.7.1  | Parameters .....       | 93  |
| 8.7.2  | Actions .....          | 93  |
| 8.7.3  | Status Codes .....     | 94  |
| 8.8    | SNP_INIT .....         | 94  |
| 8.8.1  | Parameters .....       | 94  |
| 8.8.2  | Actions .....          | 94  |
| 8.8.3  | Status Codes .....     | 94  |
| 8.9    | SNP_INIT_EX .....      | 94  |
| 8.9.1  | Parameters .....       | 96  |
| 8.9.2  | Actions .....          | 96  |
| 8.9.3  | Status Codes .....     | 98  |
| 8.10   | SNP_GCTX_CREATE .....  | 99  |
| 8.10.1 | Parameters .....       | 99  |
| 8.10.2 | Actions .....          | 99  |
| 8.10.3 | Status Codes .....     | 100 |
| 8.11   | SNP_ACTIVATE .....     | 100 |
| 8.11.1 | Parameters .....       | 100 |
| 8.11.2 | Actions .....          | 100 |
| 8.11.3 | Status Codes .....     | 101 |
| 8.12   | SNP_ACTIVATE_EX .....  | 102 |
| 8.12.1 | Parameters .....       | 102 |
| 8.12.2 | Actions .....          | 102 |
| 8.12.3 | Status Codes .....     | 103 |
| 8.13   | SNP_DECOMMISSION ..... | 104 |
| 8.13.1 | Parameters .....       | 104 |
| 8.13.2 | Actions .....          | 104 |
| 8.13.3 | Status Codes .....     | 105 |
| 8.14   | SNP_DF_FLUSH .....     | 105 |
| 8.14.1 | Parameters .....       | 105 |
| 8.14.2 | Actions .....          | 105 |
| 8.14.3 | Status Codes .....     | 105 |
| 8.15   | SNP_SHUTDOWN .....     | 106 |

|        |                         |     |
|--------|-------------------------|-----|
| 8.15.1 | Parameters .....        | 106 |
| 8.15.2 | Actions .....           | 106 |
| 8.15.3 | Status Codes .....      | 106 |
| 8.16   | SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX .....   | 106 |
| 8.16.1 | Parameters .....        | 106 |
| 8.16.2 | Actions .....           | 107 |
| 8.16.3 | Status Codes .....      | 107 |
| 8.17   | SNP_LAUNCH_START .....  | 108 |
| 8.17.1 | Parameters .....        | 108 |
| 8.17.2 | Actions .....           | 109 |
| 8.17.3 | Status Codes .....      | 111 |
| 8.18   | SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE ..... | 111 |
| 8.18.1 | Parameters .....        | 111 |
| 8.18.2 | Actions .....           | 113 |
| 8.18.3 | Status Codes .....      | 119 |
| 8.19   | SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH ..... | 120 |
| 8.19.1 | Parameters .....        | 120 |
| 8.19.2 | Actions .....           | 121 |
| 8.19.3 | Status Codes .....      | 122 |
| 8.20   | SNP_GUEST_STATUS .....  | 123 |
| 8.20.1 | Parameters .....        | 123 |
| 8.20.2 | Actions .....           | 123 |
| 8.20.3 | Status Codes .....      | 124 |
| 8.21   | SNP_PAGE_MOVE .....     | 124 |
| 8.21.1 | Parameters .....        | 124 |
| 8.21.2 | Actions .....           | 125 |
| 8.21.3 | Status Codes .....      | 126 |
| 8.22   | SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT .....  | 127 |
| 8.22.1 | Parameters .....        | 127 |
| 8.22.2 | Actions .....           | 127 |
| 8.22.3 | Status Codes .....      | 128 |
| 8.23   | SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT ..... | 128 |

|        |                         |     |
|--------|-------------------------|-----|
| 8.23.1 | Parameters .....        | 128 |
| 8.23.2 | Actions .....           | 129 |
| 8.23.3 | Status Codes .....      | 133 |
| 8.24   | SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN.....   | 133 |
| 8.24.1 | Parameters .....        | 134 |
| 8.24.2 | Actions .....           | 134 |
| 8.24.3 | Status Codes .....      | 137 |
| 8.25   | SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM.....   | 138 |
| 8.25.1 | Parameters .....        | 138 |
| 8.25.2 | Actions .....           | 138 |
| 8.25.3 | Status Codes .....      | 139 |
| 8.26   | SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH .....  | 139 |
| 8.26.1 | Parameters .....        | 139 |
| 8.26.2 | Actions .....           | 140 |
| 8.26.3 | Status Codes .....      | 140 |
| 8.27   | SNP_GUEST_REQUEST.....  | 140 |
| 8.27.1 | Parameters .....        | 141 |
| 8.27.2 | Actions .....           | 143 |
| 8.27.3 | Status Codes .....      | 144 |
| 8.28   | SNP_DBG_DECRYPT.....    | 145 |
| 8.28.1 | Parameters .....        | 145 |
| 8.28.2 | Actions .....           | 145 |
| 8.28.3 | Status Codes .....      | 146 |
| 8.29   | SNP_DBG_ENCRYPT.....    | 146 |
| 8.29.1 | Parameters .....        | 147 |
| 8.29.2 | Actions .....           | 147 |
| 8.29.3 | Status Codes .....      | 148 |
| 8.30   | SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE..... | 148 |
| 8.30.1 | Parameters .....        | 148 |
| 8.30.2 | Actions .....           | 149 |
| 8.30.3 | Status Codes .....      | 149 |
| 8.31   | SNP_VLEK_LOAD.....      | 150 |

|        |                            |     |
|--------|----------------------------|-----|
| 8.31.1 | Parameters .....           | 150 |
| 8.31.2 | Actions .....              | 151 |
| 8.31.3 | Status Codes.....          | 151 |
| 8.32   | SNP_TSC_INFO .....         | 152 |
| 8.32.1 | Parameters.....            | 152 |
| 8.32.2 | Actions .....              | 152 |
| 8.32.3 | Status Codes.....          | 153 |
| 8.33   | SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ.....     | 153 |
| 8.33.1 | Parameters.....            | 153 |
| 8.33.2 | Actions .....              | 154 |
| 8.33.3 | Status Codes.....          | 155 |
| 8.33.4 | Return Information.....    | 155 |
| 8.34   | SNP_INIT_START .....       | 155 |
| 8.34.1 | Parameters.....            | 155 |
| 8.34.2 | Actions .....              | 155 |
| 8.34.3 | Status Codes.....          | 157 |
| 8.35   | SNP_INIT_CONTINUE.....     | 157 |
| 8.35.1 | Parameters.....            | 157 |
| 8.35.2 | Actions .....              | 157 |
| 8.35.3 | Status Codes.....          | 158 |
| 8.36   | SNP_INIT_FINISH .....      | 158 |
| 8.36.1 | Parameters.....            | 159 |
| 8.36.2 | Actions .....              | 159 |
| 8.36.3 | Status Codes.....          | 160 |
| 8.37   | SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION..... | 160 |
| 8.37.1 | Parameters.....            | 160 |
| 8.37.2 | Actions .....              | 162 |
| 8.37.3 | Status Codes.....          | 163 |
| 8.38   | FEATURE_INFO .....         | 163 |
| 8.38.1 | Parameters.....            | 164 |
| 8.38.2 | Actions .....              | 164 |
| 8.38.3 | Status Codes.....          | 165 |

|                   |                                           |            |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------|
| 8.39              | SNP_CSVCEK_CERT .....                     | 165        |
| 8.39.1            | Parameters .....                          | 165        |
| 8.39.2            | Actions .....                             | 165        |
| 8.39.3            | Status Codes .....                        | 166        |
| 8.40              | SNP_GET_CORIM.....                        | 166        |
| 8.40.1            | Parameters .....                          | 166        |
| 8.40.2            | Actions .....                             | 167        |
| 8.40.3            | Status Codes .....                        | 168        |
| 8.41              | SNP_GET_CSR .....                         | 168        |
| 8.41.1            | Parameters .....                          | 168        |
| 8.41.2            | Actions .....                             | 168        |
| 8.41.3            | Status Codes .....                        | 169        |
| 8.42              | SNP_GET_TPM_INFO .....                    | 169        |
| 8.42.1            | Parameters .....                          | 169        |
| 8.42.2            | Actions .....                             | 170        |
| 8.42.3            | Status Codes .....                        | 170        |
| <b>Appendix A</b> | <b>Common Algorithms.....</b>             | <b>171</b> |
| A.1               | Aead_Wrap().....                          | 171        |
| A.2               | Aead_Unwrap().....                        | 171        |
| <b>Appendix B</b> | <b>Digital Signatures .....</b>           | <b>172</b> |
| <b>Appendix C</b> | <b>CSVCEK Certificate Chain.....</b>      | <b>173</b> |
| <b>Appendix D</b> | <b>Certificate Signing Requests .....</b> | <b>175</b> |

## List of Figures

---

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1 RMP Pre-Initialization State Transitions..... | 52  |
| Figure 2. SNP Page State Machine .....                 | 57  |
| Figure 3. CSVCEK Certificate Chain .....               | 173 |

## List of Tables

---

|                                                                                                         |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 1. External References .....                                                                      | 25 |
| Table 2. Layout of the MDATA Structure .....                                                            | 26 |
| Table 3. Structure of the TCB_VERSION Field for “Venice” based programs .....                           | 27 |
| Table 4. Structure of the TCB_VERSION Field for “Turin” based programs .....                            | 28 |
| Table 5. Structure of the TCB_VERSION Field for “Genoa” and “Milan” based programs .....                | 28 |
| Table 6. Structure of the ETCB_VERSION Field for “Venice” based programs .....                          | 29 |
| Table 7. Layout of the TPM_INFO structure .....                                                         | 30 |
| Table 8. Commands Available in Each State .....                                                         | 32 |
| Table 9. Fields of the Guest Context (GCTX) .....                                                       | 40 |
| Table 10. Guest State Definition .....                                                                  | 42 |
| Table 11. Guest State Transitions .....                                                                 | 43 |
| Table 12. Guest Policy Structure .....                                                                  | 43 |
| Table 13. Contents of Each Subfunction of Fn8000_0024 .....                                             | 48 |
| Table 14. Page State Definitions .....                                                                  | 55 |
| Table 15. Contents of Metadata Entries for Swapped-Out Data Pages, VMSA Pages, and Metadata Pages ..... | 59 |
| Table 16. Command Identifiers .....                                                                     | 61 |
| Table 17. Status Codes .....                                                                            | 62 |
| Table 18. SEV Status Codes .....                                                                        | 63 |
| Table 19. SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ Structure .....                                                             | 66 |
| Table 20. CPUID_FUNCTION Structure .....                                                                | 66 |
| Table 21. SNP_MSG_CPUID_RSP Structure .....                                                             | 67 |
| Table 22. Data Mixed into the Derived Guest Key .....                                                   | 67 |
| Table 23. SNP_MSG_KEY_REQ Message Structure .....                                                       | 68 |
| Table 24. Structure of the GUEST_FIELD_SELECT Field .....                                               | 69 |
| Table 25. SNP_MSG_KEY_RSP Message Structure .....                                                       | 70 |
| Table 26. SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ Message Structure .....                                                    | 70 |
| Table 27. ATTESTATION_REPORT Structure .....                                                            | 72 |
| Table 28. Structure of the PLATFORM_INFO Field .....                                                    | 74 |
| Table 29. SNP_MSG_REPORT_RSP Message Structure .....                                                    | 75 |

---

|                                                                         |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 30. SNP_MSG_EXPORT_REQ Message Structure .....                    | 75  |
| Table 31. SNP_MSG_EXPORT_RSP Message Structure .....                    | 76  |
| Table 32. GCTX Field Structure.....                                     | 76  |
| Table 33. SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_REQ Message Structure.....                | 78  |
| Table 34. SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_RSP Message Structure .....               | 80  |
| Table 35. Structure of the SNP_MSG_VMRK_REQ Guest Message .....         | 80  |
| Table 36. SNP_MSG_VMRK_RSP Message Structure.....                       | 81  |
| Table 37. SNP_MSG_TSC_INFO_REQ Message Structure .....                  | 81  |
| Table 38. SNP_MSG_TSC_INFO_RSP Message Structure .....                  | 81  |
| Table 39. SNP_MSG_GET_CSR_RSP Message Structure .....                   | 82  |
| Table 40: Layout of the SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_REQ request message. ....  | 82  |
| Table 41: Layout of the SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_RSP response message.....  | 82  |
| Table 42. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX Structure.....  | 84  |
| Table 43. Status Codes for DOWNLOAD_FW_EX .....                         | 86  |
| Table 44. Status Codes for SNP_COMMIT .....                             | 87  |
| Table 45. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS Structure.....       | 88  |
| Table 46. Layout of the STRUCT_PLATFORM_STATUS Structure .....          | 88  |
| Table 47. Status Codes for SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS .....                    | 90  |
| Table 48. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX Structure .....   | 90  |
| Table 49. Layout of the STRUCT_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX Structure .....       | 91  |
| Table 50. Status Codes for SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX.....                  | 93  |
| Table 51. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_CONFIG_STATUS Structure .....        | 93  |
| Table 52. Status Codes for SNP_CONFIG_STATUS.....                       | 94  |
| Table 53. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_INIT_EX Structure.....               | 96  |
| Table 54. Status Codes for SNP_INIT_EX .....                            | 98  |
| Table 55. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_GCTX_CREATE Structure.....           | 99  |
| Table 56. Guest Context Initialized by the SNP_GCTX_CREATE Command..... | 99  |
| Table 57. Status Codes for SNP_GCTX_CREATE .....                        | 100 |
| Table 58. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_ACTIVATE Structure .....             | 100 |
| Table 59. Status Codes for SNP_ACTIVATE.....                            | 101 |
| Table 60. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_ACTIVATE_EX Structure.....           | 102 |
| Table 61. Status Codes for SNP_ACTIVATE_EX .....                        | 103 |

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 62. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_DECOMMISSION Structure .....           | 104 |
| Table 63. Status Codes for SNP_DECOMMISSION .....                         | 105 |
| Table 64. Status Codes for SNP_DF_FLUSH .....                             | 105 |
| Table 65. Status Codes for SNP_SHUTDOWN .....                             | 106 |
| Table 66. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX Structure .....            | 106 |
| Table 67. Status Codes for SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX .....                          | 107 |
| Table 68. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_LAUNCH_START Structure .....           | 108 |
| Table 69. Guest Context Field Initialization for the Launch Flow .....    | 110 |
| Table 70. Status Codes for SNP_LAUNCH_START .....                         | 111 |
| Table 71. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE Structure .....          | 111 |
| Table 72. Encodings for the PAGE_TYPE Field .....                         | 112 |
| Table 73. VMPL Permission Mask .....                                      | 112 |
| Table 74. Layout of the PAGE_INFO Structure .....                         | 114 |
| Table 75. Secrets Page Format .....                                       | 117 |
| Table 76. CPUID Page Format .....                                         | 119 |
| Table 77. Status Codes for SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE .....                        | 119 |
| Table 78. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH Structure .....          | 120 |
| Table 79. Structure of the ID Block .....                                 | 120 |
| Table 80. Layout of the ID Authentication Information Structure .....     | 121 |
| Table 81. Guest Context Fields Initialized During SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH ..... | 122 |
| Table 82. Status Codes for SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH .....                        | 122 |
| Table 83. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_GUEST_STATUS Structure .....           | 123 |
| Table 84. Layout of the STRUCT_SNP_GUEST_STATUS Structure .....           | 123 |
| Table 85. Status Codes for SNP_GUEST_STATUS .....                         | 124 |
| Table 86. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_MOVE Structure .....              | 124 |
| Table 87. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_MOVE .....                            | 126 |
| Table 88. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT Structure .....           | 127 |
| Table 89. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT .....                         | 128 |
| Table 90. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT Structure .....          | 128 |
| Table 91. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Data Pages .....                     | 130 |
| Table 92. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Metadata Pages .....                 | 131 |
| Table 93. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Data Pages .....                     | 132 |

|                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 94. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT .....                          | 133 |
| Table 95. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN Structure .....             | 134 |
| Table 96. Determining the Page Type Based on the Metadata Entry .....       | 135 |
| Table 97. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN .....                           | 137 |
| Table 98. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM Structure.....              | 138 |
| Table 99. State Transitions Triggered by the SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM Command ..... | 139 |
| Table 100. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM .....                          | 139 |
| Table 101. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH Structure .....            | 139 |
| Table 102. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH.....                           | 140 |
| Table 103. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_GUEST_REQUEST Structure .....           | 141 |
| Table 104. Message Header Format .....                                      | 141 |
| Table 105. AEAD Algorithm Encodings.....                                    | 142 |
| Table 106. Message Type Encodings .....                                     | 142 |
| Table 107. Status Codes for SNP_GUEST_REQUEST.....                          | 144 |
| Table 108. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_DBG_DECRYPT Structure .....             | 145 |
| Table 109. Status Codes for SNP_DBG_DECRYPT .....                           | 146 |
| Table 110. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_DBG_ENCRYPT Structure .....             | 147 |
| Table 111. Status Codes for SNP_DBG_ENCRYPT .....                           | 148 |
| Table 112. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE Structure .....          | 148 |
| Table 113. Layout of the RANGE_LIST Structure .....                         | 149 |
| Table 114. Layout of the RANGE Structure .....                              | 149 |
| Table 115. Status Codes for SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE.....                         | 149 |
| Table 116. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_VLEK_LOAD Structure .....               | 150 |
| Table 117. Layout of the WRAPPED_VLEK_HASHSTICK Structure (Version 0h)..... | 150 |
| Table 118. Status Codes for SNP_VLEK_LOAD.....                              | 151 |
| Table 119: CMDBUF_SNP_TSC_INFO Command Structure .....                      | 152 |
| Table 120. Status Codes for SNP_TSC_INFO .....                              | 153 |
| Table 121. CMDBUF_SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ Message Structure .....                 | 153 |
| Table 122. Status Codes for CMDBUF_SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ.....                   | 155 |
| Table 123. Status Codes for SNP_INIT_START .....                            | 157 |
| Table 124. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_INIT_CONTINUE Message Structure.....    | 157 |
| Table 125. Status Codes for SNP_INIT_CONTINUE .....                         | 158 |

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 126. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_INIT_FINISH Message Structure .....  | 159 |
| Table 127. Status Codes for SNP_INIT_FINISH .....                        | 160 |
| Table 128. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION Structure .....    | 160 |
| Table 129. Command Descriptions .....                                    | 161 |
| Table 130. Layout of the SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION_DST_PADDR Structure ..... | 161 |
| Table 131. Layout of the SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION_SRC_PADDR Structure ..... | 162 |
| Table 132. Status Codes for SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION .....                  | 163 |
| Table 133. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_FEATURE_INFO Structure .....         | 164 |
| Table 134. Layout of the FEATURE_INFO Structure (Version 1h) .....       | 164 |
| Table 135. Status Codes for SNP_FEATURE_INFO .....                       | 165 |
| Table 136. Layout of the CMDBUF_SNP_CSVCEK Structure .....               | 165 |
| Table 137. DATA_OBJECT_HEADER for CSVCEK Certificate Object .....        | 166 |
| Table 138. Status Codes for CMDBUF_SNP_SNP_CSVCEK .....                  | 166 |
| Table 139. CMDBUF_SNP_GET_CORIM Message Structure .....                  | 166 |
| Table 140. DATA_OBJECT_HEADER for CoRIM ID List Object .....             | 167 |
| Table 141. Status Codes for CMDBUF_SNP_GET_CORIM .....                   | 168 |
| Table 142. CMDBUF_SNP_GET_CSR Message Structure .....                    | 168 |
| Table 143. Layout of the CSR .....                                       | 169 |
| Table 144. Status Codes for CMDBUF_SNP_GET_CSR .....                     | 169 |
| Table 145. Layout of the CMDBUF_GET_TPM_INFO structure. ....             | 169 |
| Table 146: Encoding for Signing Algorithms .....                         | 172 |
| Table 147. ECC Curve Identifier Encodings .....                          | 172 |
| Table 148. Format for an ECDSA P-384 with SHA-384 Signature .....        | 172 |
| Table 149. Format for an ECDSA P-384 Public Key .....                    | 172 |
| Table 150. CSVCEK Certificate Fields .....                               | 173 |
| Table 151. LDevID CSR Format .....                                       | 175 |
| Table 152. FMC_Alias CSR Format .....                                    | 175 |

## Revision History

| Date        | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| August 2026 | 1.59     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section 1.4: Added SEV-TIO ABI reference</li> <li>Section 2.2: Updated VCEK description, added CSVSEK</li> <li>Section 2.3: Added TCB version for "Venice"</li> <li>Added section 2.4: ETCB_VERSION structure</li> <li>Added section 2.6: TPM_INFO structure</li> <li>Section 3.2: Updated Platform state machine commands</li> <li>Added section 3.8: dTPM Binding to Guest Attestation</li> <li>Added section 3.9: Extended TCB</li> <li>Section 4.1: Updated Guest Context fields</li> <li>Section 4.11: Removed mentions of Guest-Assisted Migration</li> <li>Section 4.12: Guest-Assisted Migration deprecated</li> <li>Section 4.13: Added many new Feature bits</li> <li>Section 5.2: Description updated, a picture added</li> <li>Section 6.1: New command identifiers added</li> <li>Section 7.2: ETCB Version fields added</li> <li>Section 7.3: ETCB and CSVCEK fields added to structures</li> <li>Section 7.4: GCTX Field Structure updated, IMI/IMD deprecated, CSVCEK added</li> <li>Section 7.5: VM Import deprecated</li> <li>Section 7.6: VM Absorb deprecated</li> <li>Section 7.7: IMD checks removed, added new IN_GCTX fields</li> <li>Section 7.8: IMI checks removed</li> <li>Added section 7.10: Get CSR guest message</li> <li>Added section 7.11: Get TPM Info guest message</li> <li>Section 8.5: Added VIOMMU</li> <li>Added section 8.6: SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX</li> <li>Section 8.7: Added ETCB_VERSION</li> <li>Section 8.9: Updated MAX_SNP_ASID and ciphertext hiding logic, added VIOMMU.</li> <li>Section 8.12: Updated MAX_SNP_ASID logic</li> <li>Section 8.13: Minor updates to Actions</li> <li>Section 8.16: Minor update to Actions</li> <li>Section 8.17: Added CVSEK, deprecated IMI/IMD</li> <li>Section 8.18: Deprecated IMI/IMD, updated VMPL permission logic</li> <li>Section 8.20, 8.33, 8.38: Added CSVCEK</li> <li>Section 8.21, 8.24: Added feature bit check</li> <li>Section 8.23: Deprecated PAGE_TYPE, added RMP.VMSA checks</li> <li>Section 8.27: Added new guest REQ and RSP message encodings, deprecated VM Import and VM Absorb messages, updated Actions</li> </ul> |

| Date         | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              |          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removed sections SNP_RMP_CREATE, SNP_RMP_INSTALL, SNP_RST_CREATE, SNP_RMPSEG_CREATE, SNP_RMPSEG_INSTALL and SNP_RST_INSTALL</li> <li>Added section 8.34: SNP_INIT_START</li> <li>Added section 8.35: SNP_INIT_CONTINUE</li> <li>Added section 8.36: SNP_INIT_FINISH</li> <li>Added section 8.39: SNP_CSVCEK_CERT</li> <li>Added section 8.40: SNP_GET_CORIM</li> <li>Added section 8.41: SNP_GET_CSR</li> <li>Added section 8.42: SNP_GET_TPM_INFO</li> <li>Added Appendix C: CSVCEK Certificate Chain</li> <li>Added Appendix D: Certificate Signing Requests</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| May 2025     | 1.58     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added Section 3.5 on Mitigation Status</li> <li>Added Section 8.37 SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION command</li> <li>Incremented Chapter 7 SNP_GUEST_REQUEST message versions and message structures</li> <li>Incremented ATTESTATION_REPORT version</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| January 2025 | 1.57     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section 2.2: VCEK <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Versioned Chip Endorsement Key (VCEK) is an attestation signing key derived from chip-unique secrets and a TCB_VERSION. The TCB_VERSION contains TCB components and associated versions. The VCEK can be computed for any TCB_VERSION less than or equal to the CurrentTcb (see Section 3.3 for details), allowing for migrations of secrets from previous versions to the current version. The VCEK is endorsed by a certificate chain whose root corresponds to an AMD manufacturing CA.</li> <li>There are two versions of the VCEK supported in EPYC – the “legacy” VCEK and chip-secret VCEK (CSVCEK). The certificate chain for the legacy VCEK can be retrieved from the Key Distribution Service (KDS). The certificate chain for the CSVCEK is retrieved through the SNP ABI. Moreover, the CSVCEK certificate chain is derived using a Device Identifier Composition Engine (DICE). For more information about DICE see <a href="https://trustedcomputinggroup.org/work-groups/dice-architectures/">https://trustedcomputinggroup.org/work-groups/dice-architectures/</a>. CSVCEK functionality was introduced in version 1.59 of the ABI. The VCEK must be determined to be secure to allow for secure generation of attestation reports.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.3: TCB_VERSION Added “Turin” structure.</li> <li>Sections 4.13, 7.2, and 8.5: Added Alias check logic for CVE-2024-21944.</li> <li>Section 8.2 DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX Updated logic flow.</li> <li>Sections 4.13, 5.2, 8.33, 8.34, 8.35, 8.36, 0, 0, and 8.9: Modified</li> </ul> |

| Date           | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                |          | support for RMP segmented and non-segmented functionality, modified SNP_RST_CREATE and SNP_RMPSEG_INSTALL parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| October 2024   | 1.56     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section 3.2: Added UNINIT state valid for FEATURE_INFO</li> <li>Sections 4.13, 7.2, and 8.33: Added SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ command for the Host to request a Guest attestation report, clarified SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ for Guest provided data</li> <li>Section 4.13 and 8.31: Added support for the SNP_TSC_INFO command to support Secure TSC.</li> <li>Section 4.13: Added support for IOMMU Buffer write safe checks.</li> <li>Sections 4.13, 5.2, 8.33, 8.34, 8.35, 8.36, 0, 0, and 8.9: Added support for RMP segmented and non-segmented functionality</li> <li>Section 4.13: Clarified ciphertext Hiding support for DRAM memory</li> <li>Section 7.2: Modified ATTESTATION_REPORT version</li> <li>Section 7.2: Modified VMPL field to support Host initiated and Guest initiated guest attestation report.</li> <li>Section 7.2: Added CPUID for CPU family / model / stepping</li> <li>Table 45. Added IS_TIO_EN support.</li> <li>Section 8.9: Extend SNP_INIT_EX for TIO_EN</li> <li>Section 8.9: Added TIO_EN flag to the CMDBUF_SNP_INIT_EX Structure.</li> <li>Section 8.9: Added requirements for HWCR MSR to be set identically across all cores.</li> <li>Section 8.30: Added check for 2MB RANGES element alignment requirement in the SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE command.</li> </ul> |
| September 2023 | 1.55     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added feature capability reporting.</li> <li>Added ciphertext hiding feature.</li> <li>Added AES-256 XTS guest policy.</li> <li>Added CXL guest policy.</li> <li>Added RAPL disable guest policy.</li> <li>Added ECC guest policy.</li> <li>Added SNP disable on SNP shutdown feature.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| November 2022  | 1.54     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added Section 3.7</li> <li>Added VLEK capability to SNP_MSG_KEY_REQ in Section 7.2</li> <li>Added VLEK capability to SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ in Section 7.3</li> <li>Updated SNP_COMMIT to manage the VLEK in Section 8.3</li> <li>Updated SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS to output whether the VLEK is loaded in Section 8.5</li> <li>Updated SNP_CONFIG to manage the VLEK in Section 8.6</li> <li>Added the SNP_VLEK_LOAD command in Section 8.31</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| August 2022    | 1.53     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Date         | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              |          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sections 3.6, 7.2, 7.3, 8.5, 8.6, and 8.9: Defined MaskChipKey and its effects on attestation and key derivation. Updated SNP_CONFIG, SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS, SNP_INIT_EX commands.</li> <li>Sections 4.1, 7.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8, and 0: Bind MA via report ID instead of MA context address.</li> <li>Section 8.9 Actions: Added check for HWCR[SmmLock]</li> <li>Section 8.16 Actions: Transitioned IOMMU pages to Reclaim state instead of Hypervisor state.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| August 2022  | 1.52     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section 5.2 Added HV-fixed page state definition.</li> <li>Section 6.1 Added SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE command ID.</li> <li>Section 8.8 Deprecated SNP_INIT</li> <li>Section 8.9 SNP_INIT_EX addition of HV-fixed pages.</li> <li>Section 8.30 Added SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| January 2022 | 1.51     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated Section 2.2 TCB_VERSION</li> <li>Updated Section 1.1 VCEK</li> <li>Added Section 3.3 Firmware Updates</li> <li>Added Section 3.4 Reported TCB</li> <li>Updated Section 4.1 Guest Context</li> <li>Added Section 4.1 Live Update</li> <li>Updated Section 4.3 Guest Policy</li> <li>Updated Section 4.4 Guest Activation</li> <li>Updated Section 5.3.9 SEV Legacy Commands</li> <li>Updated Section 6.1 Command Identifier</li> <li>Updated Section 6.2 Status Codes</li> <li>Updated Section 7.2 Key Derivation</li> <li>Updated Section 7.3 Attestation</li> <li>Updated Section 7.4 VM Export</li> <li>Updated Section 7.5 VM Import</li> <li>Updated Section 7.6 VM Absorb</li> <li>Updated Section 7.7 VM Absorb – No Migration Agent</li> <li>Added Section 7.9 TSC Info</li> <li>Added Section 8.2 DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX</li> <li>Added Section 8.3 SNP_COMMIT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.3 Actions</li> <li>Updated Section 8.6 SNP_CONFIG</li> <li>Updated Section 8.9 Actions for SNP_INIT_EX</li> <li>Updated Section 8.10 Actions for SNP_GCTX_CREATE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.11 Actions and Status Codes for SNP_ACTIVATE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.12 SNP_ACTIVATE_EX</li> <li>Updated Section 8.13 SNP_DECOMMISSION</li> <li>Updated Section 8.15 SNP_SHUTDOWN</li> </ul> |

| Date        | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added Section 8.16 SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX</li> <li>Updated Section 8.17 SNP_LAUNCH_START</li> <li>Updated Section 8.18 SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.19 SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH</li> <li>Updated Section 8.20 SNP_LAUNCH_STATUS</li> <li>Updated Section 8.21 SNP_PAGE_MOVE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.22 SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.23 SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.24 SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN</li> <li>Updated Section 8.27 SNP_GUEST_REQUEST</li> <li>Updated Section 8.28 SNP_DBG_DECRYPT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.29 SNP_DBG_ENCRYPT</li> <li>Added Appendix B: Digital Signatures</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| April 2021  | 0.90     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated Section 5.3.9 SEV Legacy Commands</li> <li>Updated Section 6.1 Command Identifier</li> <li>Updated Section 7.1 CPUID Reporting</li> <li>Updated Section 7.3 Attestation</li> <li>Updated Section 7.4 VM Export</li> <li>Updated Section 7.5 VM Import</li> <li>Updated Section 7.6 VM Absorb</li> <li>Updated Section 7.7 VM Absorb – No Migration Agent</li> <li>Updated Section 8.4 GET_ID</li> <li>Added Section 8.8 SNP_INIT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.9 SNP_INIT_EX</li> <li>Updated Section 8.11 Actions for SNP_ACTIVATE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.12 Status Codes for SNP_ACTIVATE_EX</li> <li>Updated Section 8.15 SNP_SHUTDOWN</li> <li>Updated Section 8.17 SNP_LAUNCH_START</li> <li>Updated Section 8.18 SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE</li> <li>Updated Section 8.19 SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH</li> <li>Updated Section 8.23 SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT</li> <li>Updated Section 8.27 SNP_GUEST_REQUEST</li> </ul> |
| August 2020 | 0.80     | <b>Updates and Additions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated 3.2 Platform State Machine</li> <li>Updated Table 16. Command Identifiers</li> <li>Updated Section 7.3 Attestation</li> <li>Updated Table 27. ATTESTATION_REPORT Structure</li> <li>Updated Section 8.5 Actions for SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS</li> <li>Updated Table 46. Layout of the STRUCT_PLATFORM_STATUS Structure</li> <li>Added Section 8.6 SNP_CONFIG</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Date       | Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            |          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Updated Section 8.9 Actions for SNP_INIT</li><li>• Updated Table 54. Status Codes for SNP_INIT</li><li>• Updated Section 8.14 Actions for SNP_DF_FLUSH</li><li>• Updated Table 64. Status Codes for SNP_DF_FLUSH</li><li>• Updated Section 8.15 Actions for SNP_SHUTDOWN</li></ul> |
| April 2020 | 0.70     | Initial public release.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

# Chapter 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Purpose

The purpose of this document is to provide details of Platform Security Processor (PSP) firmware support for the Secure Nested Paging (SEV-SNP) enhancement to SEV. The PSP exposes a set of functions to the hypervisor for guest lifecycle management of SNP-enabled guests.

## 1.2 Scope

This document describes the software interface for functions supported by the PSP for SNP VM management. It does not describe the x86 CPU or System-on-Chip (SoC) hardware support for SNP. While certain sections of this document may describe potential hypervisor usage of the firmware ABI, this document is not intended to prescribe any specific use or hypervisor architecture. Please refer to *AMD 64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* (publication #40332) for the x86 ISA mechanisms related to SEV-SNP and to the whitepaper *AMD SEV-SNP: Strengthening VM Isolation with Integrity Protection and More* for a high-level description of SEV-SNP and the features it provides.

## 1.3 Intended Audience

The intended audience of this document is hypervisor developers, kernel developers, and security architects. Hypervisor developers supporting SNP will need to use the firmware functions described herein for VM lifecycle management. Additionally, kernel developers and security architects will need to use the guest message functions to perform secure attestation, key management, and migration.

## 1.4 References

**Table 1. External References**

| Reference | Document                                                                                                     |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| APM       | <i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volumes 1–5, publication #40332</i>                               |
| PPR       | <i>Processor Programming Reference</i>                                                                       |
| SNP-WP    | <i>AMD SEV-SNP: Strengthening VM Isolation with Integrity Protection and More</i>                            |
| SEV       | <i>Secure Encrypted Virtualization API Specification, publication #55766</i>                                 |
| KDS-VCEK  | <i>Versioned Chip Endorsement Key (VCEK) Certificate and KDS Interface Specification, publication #57230</i> |
| SEV-TIO   | <i>SEV-TIO Firmware Interface Specification, publication #58271</i>                                          |

## Chapter 2 Data Structures and Encodings

This section describes data structures that are common to multiple commands.

### 2.1 Metadata Entries (MDATA)

Table 2 describes a metadata entry within a metadata page. Metadata entries describe security attributes of pages that have been swapped out. When pages are swapped back in, the firmware uses the metadata entries to ensure the SNP security properties are not violated.

**Table 2. Layout of the MDATA Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name           | Description                                                                                               |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:0  | SOFTWARE_DATA  | Software-available data supplied by the hypervisor.                                                       |
| 08h         | 63:0  | IV             | Initialization vector used to encrypt the swapped-out page.                                               |
| 10h         | 127:0 | AUTH_TAG       | Authentication tag of the swapped-out page.                                                               |
| 20h         | 63:12 | GPA            | Bits 63:12 of the gPA of the swapped-out page.                                                            |
|             | 11:5  | —              | Reserved.                                                                                                 |
|             | 4     | PAGE_SIZE      | Indicates the size of the swapped-out page. If set to 0, the page is 4 KB. If set to 1, the page is 2 MB. |
|             | 3     | METADATA       | Indicates that the swapped-out page is a metadata page.                                                   |
|             | 2     | VMSA           | Contains RMP.VMSA of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                                       |
|             | 1     | PAGE_VALIDATED | Contains RMP.Validated of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                                  |
|             | 0     | VALID          | Indicates this metadata entry is valid.                                                                   |
| 28h         | 31:24 | VMPL3          | The permission mask RMP.VMPL3 of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                           |
|             | 23:16 | VMPL2          | The permission mask RMP.VMPL2 of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                           |
|             | 15:8  | VMPL1          | The permission mask RMP.VMPL1 of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                           |
|             | 7:0   | VMPL0          | The permission mask RMP.VMPL0 of the page at the time the page was swapped out.                           |
| 2Ch         | 31:0  | MDATA_INFO     | Internally used MDATA fields.                                                                             |
| 30h         | 63:0  | —              | Reserved.                                                                                                 |
| 38h         | 63:0  | —              | Reserved.                                                                                                 |

## 2.2 VCEK

The Versioned Chip Endorsement Key (VCEK) is an attestation signing key derived from chip-unique secrets and a TCB\_VERSION. The TCB\_VERSION contains TCB components and associated versions. The VCEK can be computed for any TCB\_VERSION less than or equal to the CurrentTcb (see *Section 3.3* for details), allowing for migrations of secrets from previous versions to the current version. The VCEK is endorsed by a certificate chain whose root corresponds to an AMD manufacturing CA.

There are two versions of the VCEK supported in EPYC – the “legacy” VCEK and chip-secret VCEK (CSVCEK). The certificate chain for the legacy VCEK can be retrieved from the Key Distribution Service (KDS). The certificate chain for the CSVCEK is retrieved through the SNP ABI. Moreover, the CSVCEK certificate chain is derived using a Device Identifier Composition Engine (DICE). For more information about DICE see <https://trustedcomputinggroup.org/workgroups/dice-architectures/>. CSVCEK functionality was introduced in version 1.59 of the ABI.

The VCEK must be determined to be secure to allow for secure generation of attestation reports.

## 2.3 TCB\_VERSION

The TCB\_VERSION is a structure containing the security version numbers of each component in the trusted computing base (TCB) of the SNP firmware. A TCB\_VERSION is associated with each image of firmware.

AMD SoCs have associated different TCB\_VERSION structure definitions. The tables below provide information for each program.

The new TCB\_VERSION structure is described in *Table 4* for processors codenamed “Venice”. It contains only those components that could impact the security integrity of the ASP specifically with respect to the security of the VCEK. Note also that the ASP boot loader was removed in “Venice.”

**Table 3. Structure of the TCB\_VERSION Field for “Venice” based programs**

| Bits  | Field | Description                                                                                                                            |
|-------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63:24 | –     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserved.</li> </ul>                                                                            |
| 23:16 | SNP   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Version of the SNP firmware.</li> <li>Security Version Number (SVN) of SNP firmware.</li> </ul> |
| 15:8  | TEE   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current ASP OS version.</li> <li>SVN of ASP operating system.</li> </ul>                        |
| 7:0   | FMC   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current ASP FMC firmware version.</li> <li>SVN of ASP FMC firmware.</li> </ul>                  |

The TCB\_VERSION structure is described in *Table 4* for processors formerly codenamed “Turin” with Family 1Ah and Models 90h-AFh and Models C0h-CFh.

**Table 4. Structure of the TCB\_VERSION Field for “Turin” based programs**

| Bits  | Field       | Description                                                                                                                          |
|-------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63:56 | MICROCODE   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lowest current patch level of all cores</li> </ul>                                            |
| 55:32 | —           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserved</li> </ul>                                                                           |
| 31:24 | SNP         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Version of the SNP firmware</li> <li>Security Version Number (SVN) of SNP firmware</li> </ul> |
| 23:16 | TEE         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current ASP OS version</li> <li>SVN of ASP operating system</li> </ul>                        |
| 15:8  | BOOT_LOADER | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current bootloader version</li> <li>SVN of ASP bootloader</li> </ul>                          |
| 7:0   | FMC         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current FMC firmware version</li> <li>SVN of FMC firmware</li> </ul>                          |

The TCB\_VERSION structure is described in *Table 5* for processors formerly codenamed “Genoa” with Family 19h Models 00h-1Fh and for “Milan” with family 19h Models 00h-0Fh.

**Table 5. Structure of the TCB\_VERSION Field for “Genoa” and “Milan” based programs**

| Bits  | Field       | Description                                                                                                                          |
|-------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63:56 | MICROCODE   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lowest current patch level of all cores</li> </ul>                                            |
| 55:48 | SNP         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Version of the SNP firmware</li> <li>Security Version Number (SVN) of SNP firmware</li> </ul> |
| 47:16 | —           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserved</li> </ul>                                                                           |
| 15:8  | TEE         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current ASP OS version</li> <li>SVN of ASP operating system</li> </ul>                        |
| 7:0   | BOOT_LOADER | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current bootloader version</li> <li>SVN of ASP bootloader</li> </ul>                          |

## 2.4 ETCB\_VERSION

The Extended TCB (ETCB) is 256-bit in size and contains the CPU ucode as well as additional components that could affect the integrity of the Guest.

**Table 6. Structure of the ETCB\_VERSION Field for “Venice” based programs**

| Bits    | Field                | Description                                                                                                                                       |
|---------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 255:112 | –                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserved</li> </ul>                                                                                        |
| 111:104 | AMD Root Guest (ARG) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SVN of ARG</li> </ul>                                                                                      |
| 103:96  | DPE_DRIVER (ASP)     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DPE Driver version</li> <li>SVN of DPE Driver firmware</li> </ul>                                          |
| 95:88   | FHP_DRIVER (ASP)     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FHP Driver version</li> <li>SVN of FHP Driver firmware</li> </ul>                                          |
| 87:80   | ASP_OS_DRIVER (ASP)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ASP OS Driver version</li> <li>SVN of ASP OS Driver firmware</li> </ul>                                    |
| 79:72   | SOC_DRIVER (ASP)     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SoC Driver firmware version</li> <li>SVN of SoC Driver firmware</li> </ul>                                 |
| 71:64   | MICROCODE            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lowest current patch level of all cores</li> <li>SPL (Security Patch Level) of all cores</li> </ul>        |
| 63:56   | TMPM                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current TMPM firmware version</li> <li>SVN of TMPM firmware</li> </ul>                                     |
| 55:48   | PRE_ESID (ASP)       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current PreEsid driver firmware version</li> <li>SVN of PreEsid driver firmware</li> </ul>                 |
| 47:40   | BOOT_DRIVER (ASP)    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current driver boot firmware version</li> <li>SVN of driver boot firmware</li> </ul>                       |
| 39:32   | HAD_DRIVER (ASP)     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current High Availability and Debuggability (HAD) firmware version</li> <li>SVN of HAD firmware</li> </ul> |
| 31:24   | ART_RT               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current AMD Root of Trust (ART) version</li> <li>SVN of ART runtime</li> </ul>                             |
| 23:16   | ART_FMC              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current ART FMC version</li> <li>SVN of ART FMC</li> </ul>                                                 |
| 15:8    | MP1                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Power Management firmware version</li> <li>SVN of MP1 firmware</li> </ul>                                  |
| 7:0     | IP_KEY_MANAGER (ASP) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current IP Key Manager firmware version</li> <li>SVN of IP Key Manager firmware</li> </ul>                 |

## 2.5 Invalid Physical Address (PADDR\_INVALID)

The value PADDR\_INVALID represents an invalid value for sPA and gPA fields in this specification. PADDR\_INVALID is defined as two's-complement –1 with a width of the field to which it is assigned.

*Note: 0h is a valid sPA and gPA.*

## 2.6 TPM\_INFO

The TPM\_INFO is the structure representing the TPM binding object. It is formatted as follows.

**Table 7. Layout of the TPM\_INFO structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|-------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 63:0  | —           | Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 08h         | 31:0  | VERSION     | Version of this structure.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 0Ch         | 31:5  | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                          |
|             | 4:2   | SIGNING_KEY | Encodes the key used to sign this report.<br>0: VCEK.<br>1: VLEK.<br>2: Chip-secret VCEK.<br>3-6: Reserved.<br>7: None.                                                                          |
|             | 1     | GUEST       | Indicates if this was retrieved by the host or the guest.<br>0: Retrieved by the host.<br>1: Retrieved by a guest.                                                                               |
|             | 0     | VALID       | Indicates that a TPM is present and we measured its identity. The following fields are valid only if this field is set. If cleared, the remainder of this structure is zeroed and is not signed. |
| 10h         | 255:0 | REPORT_ID   | If VALID is set, the REPORT_ID of the guest this is bound to. Zero otherwise.                                                                                                                    |
| 30h         | 383:0 | EK_DIGEST   | If VALID is set, SHA-384 digest of the public component of the TPM EK collected during platform boot. Zero otherwise.                                                                            |
| 60h         | 127:0 | NONCE       | If VALID is set, the nonce supplied by the caller. Zero otherwise.                                                                                                                               |
| 70h         | 31:0  | NV_INDEX    | If VALID is set, the NV index used to retrieve the TPM EK. Zero otherwise.                                                                                                                       |
| 74h         | 255:0 | Reserved    | Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Byte Offset | Bits      | Name      | Description                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 94h-294h    | 512 bytes | SIGNATURE | Signature of bytes 0h to 93h inclusive of this report. The format of the signature is described in <i>Chapter 10</i> of this ABI. |

## Chapter 3 Platform Management

Before SNP VMs can be launched, the platform must be properly configured and initialized. Platform initialization is accomplished via the SNP\_INIT command, which verifies that SNP has been enabled across all CPUs and configured correctly. Further, the platform contains a state machine that restricts which commands may be executed at certain times throughout execution.

### 3.1 Feature Detection and Enablement

On initialization, the SNP\_INIT command will check that the SEV-SNP feature is available and globally enabled. See [APM] Volume 2, Section 15.36, for information on feature detection and enablement.

### 3.2 Platform State Machine

The SNP firmware may exist in two states: UNINIT and INIT. Certain commands may be executed only in each of these states.

**Table 8. Commands Available in Each State**

| State  | Encoding | Description                                                                 | Allowed Platform Commands                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UNINIT | 0h       | The platform is uninitialized. This is the reset state of the PSP firmware. | DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE<br>GET_ID<br>SNP_INIT<br>SNP_INIT_EX<br>SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS<br>SNP_DF_FLUSH<br>SNP_SHUTDOWN<br>SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX<br>INIT_START<br>SNP_CONFIG<br>DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX<br>SNP_COMMIT<br>SNP_FEATURE_INFO |
| INIT   | 1h       | The platform is initialized.                                                | All SNP commands except<br>DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE<br>SNP_INIT<br>SNP_INIT_START<br>SNP_VLEK_LOAD                                                                                                                            |

### 3.3 Firmware Updates

Each SNP firmware is associated with a firmware version that comprises a major version, minor version, and build number. When loaded, the firmware tracks its firmware version with `CurrentVersion`. SNP firmware images are also associated with a security version number (SVN). Together with the SVNs of the other TCB components, loaded firmware tracks its current `TCB_VERSION` in `CurrentTcb`.

The hypervisor may request to replace the current firmware image with a different firmware image using the `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` command. This is usable when the SNP firmware is in either the `UNINIT` or `INIT` states, but SEV-legacy firmware must be in the `UNINIT` state. When the new firmware image is installed, the `CurrentVersion` and `CurrentTcb` are updated with the new firmware image's version and SVN.

The firmware supports provisional updates such that the hypervisor can roll back to previously loaded firmware if it chooses. To accomplish this, the firmware tracks the committed firmware version and `TCB_VERSION` in the `CommittedVersion` and `CommittedTcb` fields. When `CommittedVersion` is equal to `CurrentVersion`, the currently loaded firmware is committed. When `CommittedVersion` is less than `CurrentVersion`, the currently loaded firmware is provisional.

Provisional firmware execution is identical to committed firmware execution except that the `TCB_VERSION` used to derive the VCEK for key derivation and attestation reports never exceeds the `CommittedTcb`.

When executing provisionally installed firmware images, the hypervisor may choose to commit or roll back. To commit, the hypervisor calls `SNP_COMMIT`, which updates `CommittedVersion` and `CommittedTcb` to `CurrentVersion` and `CurrentTcb`, respectively. To roll back, the hypervisor invokes `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` with the image of the previously committed firmware version.

As an example, consider a platform that boots with version 1.51.1 stored in flash. The hypervisor may provisionally install an image of version 1.51.21 with `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX`. At this point, `CurrentVersion` is 1.51.21 and `CommittedVersion` is 1.51.1. The hypervisor may either invoke `SNP_COMMIT` to set `CommittedVersion` to 1.51.21, or the hypervisor may invoke `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` with the firmware image of 1.51.1 to roll back. The firmware will reject any firmware update other than to 1.51.1. After committing to 1.51.21, the hypervisor may provisionally install newer versions of firmware.

Each firmware image is also associated with a minimum version from which it can live upgrade called `MinUpgradeFrom`. `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` uses this number to determine if the current firmware version is too far from the provided firmware image to be capable of changing with SNP guests running. In this scenario, the hypervisor must invoke `SNP_SHUTDOWN` before executing `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` to return the firmware to `UNINIT`. `MinUpgradeFrom` is set per image based on the specific nature of the upgrade and technical limitations of upgrading from distant past versions.

Guest context pages are versioned with the last firmware version that touched them. If CurrentVersion is different from the latest firmware version that touched the guest context page, the firmware will upgrade or downgrade the context page. A command that triggers an upgrade of the guest context page to a provisional version of the firmware may fail by returning UPDATE\_FAILED. A failed update does not alter the guest context page.

If a guest context page is updated to a provisional firmware version, then updating the context page back to the committed version after a rollback will always succeed.

## 3.4 Reported TCB

The firmware maintains a TCB\_VERSION called ReportedTcb. ReportedTcb is used to derive the VCEK that signs the attestation report.

ReportedTcb is initially set to the CurrentTcb. When SNP\_CONFIG is invoked with a non-zero REPORTED\_TCB parameter, ReportedTcb is set to the provided value. ReportedTcb is reset to CommittedTcb either on SNP\_COMMIT or if SNP\_CONFIG is provided a zero REPORTED\_TCB.

ReportedTcb can be used by hypervisors to decouple the installation of a new firmware image from the use of its new VCEK. A hypervisor can install a new firmware image and then set ReportedTcb via SNP\_CONFIG so that all attestation reports are still signed with VCEK. This allows a hypervisor the opportunity to ensure that guest owners have retrieved the VCEK certificates before using the new VCEK.

## 3.5 Mitigation Status

Mitigation status for security vulnerabilities which potentially impact the SEV-SNP TCB are available on the platform to allow the Host OS/HV (Host) and the Guest VMs (Guest) to determine status for specific vulnerability mitigations.

Mitigation status information is contained within mitigation vector data objects. There are two mitigation vector types available, the supported mitigation vector and the currently verified/enabled mitigation vector. These vector values are tracked like the TCB data and apply for CURRENT and LAUNCH states.

### 3.5.1 Guest Mitigation Status

Mitigation information content is accessible to the Guest VMs (Guest) and is provided via the Guest Attestation Report and the Guest Secrets Page. The Guest information contains only the mitigation vector values that are currently verified/enabled on the platform, while the Host OS/HV (Host) receives both the verified mitigation vector as well as the supported mitigation vector values. Note that the Guest has the option to add in a specific mitigation vector value to include into the Derived Guest Key. This mitigation vector for the derived key must only contain mitigation bits that have been set in the launch mitigation vector value set at Guest launch.

### 3.5.2 Host Mitigation Status

The `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION` command allows the Host to initiate a request to perform mitigation operations and to determine the verified mitigations and supported mitigation status information.

The steps required to mitigate a specific vulnerability may vary depending on the nature of the vulnerability. The AMD Security Bulletin associated with each vulnerability will contain mitigation details for that specific issue. In some cases, the SEV FW will automatically perform the necessary mitigation steps as part of the `SNP_INIT` function. In other cases, the host may be able to call the `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION` function to resolve the vulnerability without performing `SNP_INIT`.

The Host may issue the `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION` command to access the status of one or more mitigations and obtain several elements of information regarding the mitigation status:

- Provide status regarding if the current SEV firmware has the mitigation verification support available to verify the mitigation (`CurrentSupMitVector`)
- Provide information concerning the status of this specific mitigation (`CurrentMitVector`)

***Note:** If the `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION` command is not supported in the currently loaded SEV firmware, then `INVALID_COMMAND` will be returned.*

The `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION` command can be determined to be supported by using the `FEATURE_INFO` command `Fn8000_0024_ECX_x00` bit 13.

The Host may issue the request the current vector of mitigations which are supported and verified (`CurrentSupMitVector/CurrentMitVector`). The Host can use these vector sets to determine if there are sufficient mitigations that are presently supported, and what has been reported.

Some mitigation solutions require the SEV firmware to be in a specific state. This information will be provided for each mitigation solution. The firmware will check the SNP firmware state based on the mitigation requirements, if the SNP firmware state is incorrect, then the firmware will return `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

## 3.6 Chip Key Masking

In version 1.53, the firmware maintains a flag, `MaskChipKey`, that controls use of the VCEK in guest attestation and guest key derivation. `MaskChipKey` initializes to 0 at `SNP_INIT_EX` and can be set by the hypervisor using the `SNP_CONFIG` command.

When `MaskChipKey` is 1, the attestation report will not be signed and will contain zeroes instead of a signature. Also, `MaskChipKey` prevents the guest from using the VCEK in guest key derivations.

## 3.7 Versioned Loaded Endorsement Key

A Versioned Loaded Endorsement Key (VLEK) is a versioned Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) P-384 signing key certified by AMD and used by SNP firmware to sign attestation reports as an alternative to the VCEK. While the VCEK is derived from a chip-unique seed, the VLEK is derived from a seed maintained by the AMD Key Derivation Service (KDS). Each Cloud Service Provider (CSP) that enrolls with AMD has dedicated VLEK seeds.

The CSP requests from the KDS the VLEK hashstick for a given TCB and machine identified by `CHIP_ID`. The KDS calculates the hashstick based on the CSP's VLEK seed and the request's TCB and then wraps the VLEK hashstick with a transport key derived from a chip-unique secret. The CSP then provisions the platform with the wrapped VLEK hashstick using the `SNP_VLEK_LOAD` command.

With the VLEK hashsticks loaded, the firmware can use the VLEK as a drop-in replacement for the VCEK in all use cases. The hypervisor can restrict guests to use only the VLEK with the `VCEK_DIS` flag in `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH`. Otherwise, guests can select whether to use the VLEK or the VCEK in key derivation and attestation report signing.

The AMD KDS will provide an interface to retrieve the VLEK certificate for a CSP at a specified TCB version. The VLEK certificates authenticate the VLEK as owned by AMD.

VLEK functionality was introduced in version 1.54.

## 3.8 dTPM Binding to Guest Attestation

When a guest runs on a system that depends on a discrete TPM (dTPM), binding the identity of the dTPM to a guest attestation report allows TPM quotes of host software and other measurements to be consumable by a guest relying party.

### 3.8.1 dTPM EK Fingerprint

The dTPM Endorsement Key (EK) is installed into the dTPM during data center intake of an EPYC server containing a TPM. The EK is assumed to uniquely identify the dTPM and is used by relying parties to validate the authenticity of TPM quotes.

The fingerprint of the EK is the SHA-384 digest of its public key component. During platform boot, before the x86 cores are released from reset, the ASP retrieves the EK public key from the dTPM from a predetermined NV index, calculates its fingerprint, and stores the fingerprint and its NV index into ASP private memory. This stored fingerprint represents the dTPM presented at boot.

### 3.8.2 Trusted Boot

When the x86 cores are released, the existing Trusted Platform Boot feature is used to authenticate and measure the x86 boot chain. After the trusted boot process is completed, the PCRs of the TPM have been extended with measurements of all components and configurations of the TCB of the platform.

At any point after trusted boot is completed, software can request a quote from the TPM which produces attestation evidence including the current PCR values of the platform. The EK is used in the process of authenticating the TPM quote.

### 3.8.3 Guest Attestation

A guest can request an attestation report with the existing SEV-SNP features. The attestation report contains evidence of the boot configuration of the guest as well as various platform configurations. The guest attestation report is signed by the SEV attestation key, either the VCEK or the VLEK as chosen by the host software.

Inside the guest attestation report is the `REPORT_ID` field. This value is 256 bits and generated by a hardware RNG at every guest launch and is constant for the lifetime of the guest. This value is used by the `SNP_GET_TPM_INFO_DIGEST` host command and the `SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_REQ` guest message.

### 3.8.4 Binding Guest Attestation to TPM EK

The SEV firmware constructs a cryptographic binding between the guest attestation report and the TPM EK by constructing a TPM binding object with the following data,

- TPM EK fingerprint
- Guest `REPORT_ID`
- TPM NV index
- Nonce

and signing the object with the SEV attestation key—either the VCEK or the VLEK as chosen by the host software.

The relying party receives the following objects:

- SEV attestation key certificate chain
- Guest attestation report
- TPM EK certificate chain
- TPM attestation key (AK) blob
- TPM quote
- TPM binding object (TPM\_INFO structure. See *Table 7*).

To perform attestation verification, the relying party proceeds as follows:

1. Validates the signature on the guest attestation report with the SEV attestation key certificate chain.
2. Verifies the evidence in guest attestation report against internal policy.
3. Authenticates the TPM quote with a process that uses the EK certificate chain and AK blob.
4. Verifies the evidence in the TPM quote against internal policy.
5. Validates signature on TPM binding object with the SEV attestation key certificate chain.
6. Verifies that the REPORT\_ID in the guest attestation report is equal to the REPORT\_ID in the TPM binding object.
7. Verifies that the TPM EK fingerprint in the TPM binding object matches the TPM EK certificate chain.

Step (6) connects the TPM binding object to the guest and its attestation report. Step (7) connects the TPM binding object to the TPM EK and the TPM quote.

## 3.9 Extended TCB

SEV/SNP customers require verifiable security on the platform including verifiable security of the Guest. AMD provides various attestation processes and attestation reports to provide proof that the current platform configuration contains acceptable security functionality and is in a secure configuration state. The Trusted Computing Base (TCB) is an important aspect of security policy enablement, with trust in the TCB required to make progress in ascertaining the security of the platform.

Attestation evidence (conveyed in reports) is an important aspect of the security verification of the TCB under use. Guest security verification utilizes AMD security processor (ASP) SEV firmware-originated attestation reports. These reports include the existing TCB structural elements within the attested data, which provides a secure verifiable method for the Host OS/HV and Guest VMs to verify the platform configuration. The TCB structural contents include specific version information for the TCB elements that can be helpful for determining if the TCB components within the platform conform to acceptable security revisions.

To provide a secure platform verification, there are two areas of security under consideration that must be determined by the Host OS and Guest VMs to be trusted and secured.

- TCB of the Guest
- TCB of the ASP

The TCB of the Guest consists of all ASP TCB components, as well as other platform components uniquely relevant to the security of the Guest.

### 3.9.1 Solution

The added separation of the Guest TCB attestation generation from the ASP TCB attestation generation is managed with the addition of an Extended TCB (ETCB). The ETCB will be in addition to the current TCB, with updated components.

TCB and ETCB structure elements are separated so that only those components which impact the security of the ASP related to the VCEK are contained within the TCB, while all other components related to guest security are in the ETCB. The Guest security could be impacted from components in both the TCB as well as the ETCB. If a security issue is associated with a component in the TCB, then the impact to the ASP and provided key derivations is impacted.

The new TCB\_VERSION structure contains only those components that could impact the security integrity of the ASP specifically with respect to the security of the VCEK.

## Chapter 4 Guest Management

The lifecycles of SNP-enabled guests are managed through the guest management ABI functions. SNP-enabled guests are identified via their guest context pages and may be launched, attested, migrated, etc., via the appropriate ABI calls. An SNP-enabled guest is created by first allocating a context page and then activating the guest on a specific ASID and adding an initial set of plaintext pages into the guest address space. After the guest has begun execution, it may request attestation reports and derived keys, and it may assist in scenarios such as live migration directly through a trusted channel with the PSP firmware.

### 4.1 Guest Context

The guest context (represented as GCTX throughout this specification) contains all the information, keys, and metadata associated with the guest that the firmware tracks to implement the SEV and SNP features. The guest context is specified in *Table 9 below*.

**Table 9. Fields of the Guest Context (GCTX)**

| Field           | Migrated? | Description                                                                                                       |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASID            | No        | The ASID that the guest's keys are installed on, if at all.                                                       |
| State           | Yes       | The current state of the guest.                                                                                   |
| MsgCount0       | Yes       | The number of guest messages that the firmware has sent to or received from VMPL0.                                |
| MsgCount1       | Yes       | The number of guest messages that the firmware has sent to or received from VMPL1.                                |
| MsgCount2       | Yes       | The number of guest messages that the firmware has sent to or received from VMPL2.                                |
| MsgCount3       | Yes       | The number of guest messages that the firmware has sent to or received from VMPL3.                                |
| Policy          | Yes       | The guest's security policy.                                                                                      |
| MaReportId      | No        | The attestation report ID of the migration agent of the guest, if the guest is associated with a migration agent. |
| MaReportIdValid | No        | Indicates if the MaReportId is valid.                                                                             |
| LD              | Yes       | The launch digest context used to measure the guest during the launch command flow.                               |
| OEK             | Yes       | The offline encryption key associated with this guest.                                                            |
| OekIvCount      | Yes       | The IV counter used for encryption with the OEK.                                                                  |
| VEK             | No        | The VM encryption key used to encrypt the guest's memory.                                                         |
| VMPCk0, VMPCk1, | Yes       | The VM communication keys.                                                                                        |

| Field             | Migrated? | Description                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMPCK2, VMPCK3    |           |                                                                                                                                        |
| VMRK              | Yes       | The VM root key provided by the MA at guest launch or guest import.                                                                    |
| HostData          | No        | Host data provided by the hypervisor during guest launch. This firmware includes this value in all attestation reports for this guest. |
| IDBlockEn         | Yes       | Indicates whether an ID block was associated with the guest.                                                                           |
| IDBlock           | Yes       | The associated ID block, if any.                                                                                                       |
| IDKeyDigest       | Yes       | The ID key digest, if any.                                                                                                             |
| AuthorKeyEn       | Yes       | Indicates whether an Author key signed the ID key.                                                                                     |
| AuthorKeyDigest   | Yes       | The Author key digest, if any.                                                                                                         |
| CsVcekEn          | No        | Indicated whether legacy or chip-secret VCEK used by guest                                                                             |
| CsVcekPref        | No        | Indicated whether legacy or chip-secret VCEK preferred for guest report signing                                                        |
| VcekDis           | Yes       | Indicates that the VCEK is disabled for this guest.                                                                                    |
| ReportID          | No        | Attestation report ID                                                                                                                  |
| RootMDEntry       | Yes       | The root metadata entry.                                                                                                               |
| IMD               | Yes       | Unsupported. Measurement of the Incoming Migration Image (IMI). Set to 0h.                                                             |
| IMIEn             | No        | Unsupported. Set to zero.                                                                                                              |
| GOSVW             | Yes       | Guest OS visible workarounds. Provided in SNP_LAUNCH_START by the hypervisor.                                                          |
| DesiredTscFreq    | Yes       | Desired TSC frequency of the guest in kHz.                                                                                             |
| PspTscOffset      | Yes       | Offset applied to guest TSC reads.                                                                                                     |
| LaunchTcb         | Yes       | The CurrentTcb of the firmware at the time the guest was created, imported, or absorbed.                                               |
| LaunchMitVector   | Yes       | The CurrentMitVector value at the time the guest was created, imported, or absorbed.                                                   |
| LastAccessVersion | No        | The CurrentVersion of the firmware that last updated or created this guest context page.                                               |
| LaunchEtcB        | Yes       | The CurrentEtcB at the time the guest was launched.                                                                                    |

The firmware stores the guest context in a page donated by the hypervisor. The hypervisor donates the page through the SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE command and reclaims it with the SNP\_PAGE\_RECLAIM command. Because the guest context page is in the Context state (see *Chapter 5* for details on the page state machine), the hypervisor cannot write to the page. The firmware prevents the hypervisor from reading from the page by encrypting the guest context.

## Live Update

The `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` command allows the hypervisor to replace the existing firmware without affecting SNP guests. This command will update (that is, downgrade or upgrade) the internal state of the SNP firmware immediately. In contrast, guest context pages will be updated during the next command or guest message that takes the guest context page.

See *Section 3.3* for further information on live updates.

## 4.2 Guest State Machine

The commands that can be successfully issued for a guest are restricted according to an internal guest state machine. The guest state machine ensures that commands are executed in the correct order. The current guest state is stored in `GCTX.State`.

**Table 10. Guest State Definition**

| State          | Encoding | Description                     | Allowed Guest Commands                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GSTATE_INIT    | 0h       | The initial state of the guest. | SNP_LAUNCH_START<br>SNP_GUEST_REQUEST (VM_IMPORT)<br>SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM<br>SNP_DECOMMISSION                                                                                                       |
| GSTATE_LAUNCH  | 1h       | The guest is being launched.    | SNP_GCTX_CREATE<br>SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE<br>SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH<br>SNP_ACTIVATE<br>SNP_DECOMMISSION<br>SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM<br>SNP_PAGE_MOVE<br>SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT<br>SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN<br>SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH |
| GSTATE_RUNNING | 2h       | The guest is currently running. | SNP_ACTIVATE<br>SNP_DECOMMISSION<br>SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM<br>SNP_PAGE_MOVE<br>SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT<br>SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN<br>SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH<br>SNP_GUEST_REQUEST                                         |

**Table 11. Guest State Transitions**

| Command           | Start State   | End State      |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| SNP_LAUNCH_START  | GSTATE_INIT   | GSTATE_LAUNCH  |
| SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH | GSTATE_LAUNCH | GSTATE_RUNNING |
| VM_ABSORB         | GSTATE_LAUNCH | GSTATE_RUNNING |
| VM_IMPORT         | GSTATE_INIT   | GSTATE_RUNNING |

## 4.3 Guest Policy

The firmware associates each guest with a guest policy that the guest owner provides. The firmware restricts what actions the hypervisor can take on this guest according to the guest policy. The policy also indicates the minimum firmware version for the guest.

The guest owner provides the guest policy to the firmware during launch. The firmware then binds the policy to the guest. The policy cannot be changed throughout the lifetime of the guest. The policy is also migrated with the guest and enforced by the destination platform firmware.

The guest policy is an 8-byte structure with the fields shown in *Table 12 below*.

**Table 12. Guest Policy Structure**

| Bit(s) | Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63:26  | —                      | Reserved. MBZ.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 25     | PAGE_SWAP_DISABLE      | Guest policy to disable Guest access to SNP_PAGE_MOVE, SNP_SWAP_OUT and SNP_SWAP_IN commands. If this policy option is selected to disable these Page Move commands, then these commands will return POLICY_FAILURE.<br>0: Do not disable Guest support for the commands.<br>1: Disable Guest support for the commands. |
| 24     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM | 0: Ciphertext hiding for the DRAM may be enabled or disabled.<br>1: Ciphertext hiding for the DRAM must be enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 23     | RAPL_DIS               | 0: Allow Running Average Power Limit (RAPL).<br>1: RAPL must be disabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 22     | MEM_AES_256_XTS        | 0: Allow either AES 128 XEX or AES 256 XTS for memory encryption.<br>1: Require AES 256 XTS for memory encryption.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 21     | CXL_ALLOW              | 0: CXL cannot be populated with devices or memory.<br>1: CXL can be populated with devices or memory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 20     | SINGLE_SOCKET          | 0: Guest can be activated on multiple sockets.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Bit(s) | Name       | Description                                                                                               |
|--------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        |            | 1: Guest can be activated only on one socket.                                                             |
| 19     | DEBUG      | 0: Debugging is disallowed.<br>1: Debugging is allowed.                                                   |
| 18     | MIGRATE_MA | 0: Association with a migration agent is disallowed.<br>1: Association with a migration agent is allowed. |
| 17     | –          | Reserved. Must be one.                                                                                    |
| 16     | SMT        | 0: SMT is disallowed.<br>1: SMT is allowed.                                                               |
| 15:8   | ABI_MAJOR  | The minimum ABI major version required for this guest to run.                                             |
| 7:0    | ABI_MINOR  | The minimum ABI minor version required for this guest to run.                                             |

The policy bits for a given guest are referenced with the format `POLICY.<FLAG_NAME>`. For instance, the flag indicating that SMT is allowed is referred to as `POLICY.SMT`.

## 4.4 Guest Activation

The processor associates each guest memory transaction with the Address Space Identifier (ASID) specified in the guest's VMCB. A guest's ASID selects the key used by the memory controller to encrypt that guest's memory. The hypervisor must inform the firmware with which ASID it will execute the guest using the VMRUN instruction. The firmware then installs the guest's VEK in the key slot associated with that ASID. To inform the firmware of the guest-ASID binding, the hypervisor calls `SNP_ACTIVATE`.

All guest data in the caches and data fabric write buffers are unencrypted. Guests with different ASIDs have logically separate caches. However, guests with the same ASID share cache lines. To ensure that a previously decommissioned guest's data is not accessible to a new guest, `SNP_ACTIVATE` will require that the caches are invalidated, and data fabric write buffers are flushed. In this case, the hypervisor must first invoke `WBINVD` on all cores. Following the `WBINVD` completion, the hypervisor must invoke the `SNP_DF_FLUSH` command. This ensures that no plain text data owned by another guest exists in the caches or in the write buffers before activation.

The hypervisor can activate a guest on a subset of core complexes using `SNP_ACTIVATE_EX`. If a guest is activated on a core complex, the hypervisor may execute the guest with that ASID on only that core complex. If `POLICY.SINGLE_SOCKET` is set for a guest executing on a system with more than one populated socket, `SNP_ACTIVATE` will always fail since it activates the guest on all sockets. Instead, the hypervisor can use `SNP_ACTIVATE_EX` to activate the guest on the core complexes of a single socket.

Guest activation must always occur before any memory is assigned to the guest by the hypervisor using the `RMPUPDATE` instruction.

## 4.5 Launching a Guest

The hypervisor starts an SNP guest by launching the guest. The hypervisor uses the commands `SNP_LAUNCH_START`, `SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE`, and `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH` to launch the guest.

`SNP_LAUNCH_START` begins the launch process. Through this command, the firmware initializes a cryptographic digest context used to construct the measurement of the guest. If the guest is expected to be migrated, `SNP_LAUNCH_START` also binds a Migration Agent (MA) to the guest. (See *Section 4.11* for further information about migration.)

`SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE` inserts data into the guest's memory. The firmware extends the cryptographic digest context with the data to bind the measurement of the guest with all operations that the hypervisor took on the guest's memory contents.

`SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE` can insert two special pages into the guest's memory: the secrets page and the CPUID page. The secrets page contains encryption keys used by the guest to interact with the firmware. Because the secrets page is encrypted with the guest's memory encryption key, the hypervisor cannot read the keys. The CPUID page contains hypervisor-provided CPUID function values that it passes to the guest. The firmware validates these values to ensure the hypervisor is not providing out-of-range values.

`SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH` finalizes the cryptographic digest and stores it as the measurement of the guest at launch. This measurement is a critical part of the guest's attestation report produced by the firmware. This command also takes identity keys to be associated with the guest used as part of the attestation report. For further information about the identity block, see *Section 4.6*. For attestation, see *Section 4.9*.

After `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH` completes successfully, the hypervisor may invoke `VMRUN` on the x86 CPU to execute the guest.

## 4.6 Identity Block

As part of the input to the `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH` command, the hypervisor may provide an optional data structure called the identity block. The identity block contains the expected launch digest of the guest, information uniquely identifying the guest, the guest policy bitfield, and a signature by the guest owner. The provided launch digest is checked against the computed launch digest, and the provided policy is checked against the policy used to launch the guest. The identifying information is stored in the guest context to be used during key derivation and attestation. Finally, the firmware will check that the signature is valid.

The firmware stores the keys used to sign the identity block in the guest context. Attestation reports for the guest contain the public keys to reflect the binding of the guest to the guest owner. A guest owner that sees its public keys in the attestation report knows that the launch process used an identity block provided by that guest owner to validate the guest.

## 4.7 Decommissioning a Guest

The hypervisor may decommission a guest by calling `SNP_DECOMMISSION` on the guest context page. The firmware prevents the hypervisor from running a decommissioned guest by marking the guest's ASID as unusable. Further, the firmware transitions the guest context page to a Firmware page, thus rendering the context page unusable.

## 4.8 Guest Messages

During the launch sequence, a special secrets page may be inserted that contains VM Platform Communication Keys (VMPCCKs) that may be used by the guest to send and receive secure messages to the PSP. Guests encrypt messages as described in the `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` function before presenting the encrypted payload to the hypervisor. The hypervisor in turn calls `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` and returns the result (also encrypted with the VMPCCK) to the guest. Guest messages are used for getting attestation reports and derived keys, handling migration, and other uses.

## 4.9 Remote Attestation

Guests may ask the PSP to generate an attestation report on their behalf via an `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` call. The guest may ask for an attestation report at any time, and multiple reports can be generated. When the guest asks for a report, it supplies 512 bits of arbitrary data to be included in the report. The resulting report will contain this data, identity information about the guest (from the launch sequence), migration, and policy information. The report is signed by VCEK, a chip-unique key specific to the current TCB version.

Guests may supply attestation reports to third parties to establish trust. The third party should verify the authenticity of the report based on its signature. A successful signature verification proves that the 512 bits of guest data supplied in the report came from the guest whose identity is described. For instance, this may be used to securely associate a public key with a particular VM instance.

## 4.10 Guest Keys

Guests may ask the PSP to derive keys for them based on various information via an `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` call. Keys are either rooted in a VM Root Key (VMRK) that is supplied as part of the launch flow (and migrates with the guest) or in the VCEK, which is machine specific. When asked for a key, the PSP uses a key derivation function (KDF) to generate the requested key based on the root value and additional parameters. Certain pieces of guest information are always mixed into the derived key while others may be optionally mixed when requested by the guest. Keys may be used to seal information on the identity of the guest or for other purposes.

## 4.11 Migration

Migration is supported by the SNP architecture through Migration Agents (MAs). A Migration Agent is itself an SNP VM that is bound to the primary VM during the launch process. A VM may be associated with only a single MA, but a single MA may manage multiple primary VMs. The MA is responsible for supplying the VMRK during the launch process and for enforcing the guest migration policy.

The MA is considered part of the guest VM's TCB. Consequently, when a guest generates an attestation report, the report includes information about the MA associated with the guest (if one exists). A third party verifying the attestation report of a guest should also verify the report of the guest's MA.

When the hypervisor wishes to migrate a guest, it first swaps all guest memory and associated metadata pages using the `SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT` command. (See *Chapter 5* for additional details.) Swapped pages are encrypted using the Offline Encryption Key (OEK). Because each swapped page must be associated with a metadata entry, eventually there will be a single metadata page remaining after all other pages are swapped. When the hypervisor swaps this page, it can choose to store its metadata entry in the special `RootMDEntry` field in the guest context.

After all the guest memory is swapped, the hypervisor asks the MA to perform the `VM_EXPORT` function via `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST`. This function sends the guest's context page to be migrated to the MA via an encrypted channel. At this point, the primary VM is no longer runnable.

The MA sends the VM context to a trusted location, such as an MA on a new machine. The mechanism that the MA uses to transfer this data and enforce security on it is outside the scope of this document.

The use of an MA is optional, and SNP guests may be started without an MA. Guests that are started without an MA may not be exported and therefore cannot migrate without shutting themselves down.

## 4.12 Guest-Assisted Migration

The guest assisting the hypervisor during the migration process using an Initial Migration Image (IMI) is not supported. Likewise, measuring the IMI into the Initial Migration Digest (IMD) is deprecated.

## 4.13 Feature Discovery

The command provides the host and guests with a programmatic means to learn about the supported features of the currently loaded firmware. Host software invokes `FEATURE_INFO` with an index, and the firmware returns four 4-byte values containing feature information associated with that index. The format of each index is described later in this section.

FEATURE\_INFO leverages the same mechanism as the CPUID instruction. Instead of using the CPUID instruction to retrieve Fn8000\_0024, software can use FEATURE\_INFO. The input to feature info includes ECX\_IN which selects the CPUID subfunction. For instance, Fn8000\_0024\_x02 is retrieved by invoking FEATURE\_INFO with ECX\_IN set to 2.

**Note:** The CPUID instruction will return all zeroes for Fn8000\_0024.

The hypervisor can provide Fn8000\_0024 values to the guest via the CPUID page in SNP\_LAUNCH\_UPDATE. As with all CPUID output recorded in that page, the hypervisor can filter Fn8000\_0024. The firmware will examine Fn8000\_0024 and apply its CPUID policy.

The FEATURE\_INFO command is valid in the UNINIT state and subsequent states.

The FEATURE\_INFO command itself is present when bit 3 of offset 8h of the output buffer of SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS is 1.

The contents of Fn8000\_0024 are described in *Table 13 below*.

**Table 13. Contents of Each Subfunction of Fn8000\_0024**

| Function            | Bits  | Field                    | Description                                                     |
|---------------------|-------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fn8000_0024_EAX_x00 | 31:0  | MaxIndex                 | The largest subfunction that FEATURE_INFO supports.             |
| Fn8000_0024_EBX_x00 | 31:4  | —                        | Reserved                                                        |
|                     | 3     | TioDevKeyUpdate          | Support for SEV-TIO IDE key update host command                 |
|                     | 2     | VIOMMU                   | Support for SEV-TIO svIOMMU feature                             |
|                     | 1     | SevTio                   | SEV TIO commands [SEV-TIO]                                      |
|                     | 0     | SevLegacy                | SEV legacy commands [SEV]                                       |
| Fn8000_0024_ECX_x00 | 31:23 | —                        | Reserved                                                        |
|                     | 22    | SnPPageSwapDisablePolicy | Support for PAGE_SWAP_DISABLE guest policy                      |
|                     | 21    | —                        | Reserved (for the future versions)                              |
|                     | 20    | SnPGetTpmInfo            | Support for SNP_GET_TPM_INFO host command                       |
|                     | 19    | ETCBSupported            | Support for Extended TCB                                        |
|                     | 18    | PKITransfer              | PKI transfer                                                    |
|                     | 17    | SevEsSnPConcurrent       | Supports SEV-ES and SNP at the same time                        |
|                     | 16    | PageSwapSupported        | If set to 1 then guest page swap commands can be enabled on the |

| Function            | Bits | Field                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     |      |                      | platform if allowed in guest policy.<br><br>The platform has an integrated TPM (Trusted Memory Page Management) module enabled for this feature to be present. Platforms before Turin will not support this feature. |
|                     | 15   | CSVCEK               | Support for CSVCEK derivation                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                     | 14   | –                    | Reserved (for the future versions)                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                     | 13   | VerifyMit            | Support for the SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION command, and support for the mitigation vector inclusion for the Guest Key Derivation support.                                                                                 |
|                     | 12   | SecureTSC            | Support for the SNP_TSC_INFO command.                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                     | 11   | HostGuestAttest      | Support for Host request to obtain the Guest attestation report SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ command.                                                                                                                           |
|                     | 10   | –                    | Reserved                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                     | 9    | AliasCheck           | The SEV firmware has support for validating the Alias check mitigation. Contains mitigation for CVE-2024-21944                                                                                                       |
|                     | 8    | PreInitSegRMP        | Support for Segmented RMP with SNP_INIT_CREATE, SNP_INIT_CONTINUE and SNP_INIT_FINISH commands.                                                                                                                      |
|                     | 7    | PreInitNonSegRMP     | Support for Non-segmented RMP with SNP_INIT_CREATE, SNP_INIT_CONTINUE and SNP_INIT_FINISH commands                                                                                                                   |
|                     | 6    | EccMemReporting      | Error correcting memory attestation                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                     | 5    | CxlAllowPolicy       | CXL guest policy requirement                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                     | 4    | Aes256XtsPolicy      | AES 256 XTS guest policy requirement                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                     | 3    | CiphertextHidingDRAM | Cipher text hiding support for DRAM                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                     | 2    | RaplDis              | RAPL disable support. See SNP_INIT_EX                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                     | 1    | X86SnpShutdown       | X86_SNP_SHUTDOWN allowed. See SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX.                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                     | 0    | Vlek                 | VLEK support                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Fn8000_0024_EDX_x00 | 31:0 | –                    | Reserved                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Function            | Bits  | Field                  | Description                             |
|---------------------|-------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Fn8000_0024_EAX_x01 | 31:19 | –                      | Reserved                                |
|                     | 18    | SnpTpmInfoReq          | SNP_MSG_TPM_INFO_REQ guest message      |
|                     | 17:16 | –                      | Reserved.                               |
|                     | 15    | SnpMsgGetCsrReq        | SNP_MSG_GET_CSR_REQ guest message       |
|                     | 14    | TioMsgSetupMappingReq  | TIO_MSG_SETUP_MAPPING_REQ guest message |
|                     | 13    | SnpMsgConfigViommuReq  | SNP_MSG_CONFIG_VIOMMU_REQ guest message |
|                     | 12    | TioMsgSdteWriteReq     | TIO_MSG_SDTE_WRITE_REQ guest message    |
|                     | 11    | TioTioMgsMmioConfigReq | TIO_MSG_MMIO_CONFIG_REQ guest message   |
|                     | 10    | TioMsgMmioValidateReq  | TIO_MSG_MMIO_VALIDATE_REQ guest message |
|                     | 9     | TioMsgTdiInfoReq       | TIO_MSG_TDI_INFO_REQ guest message      |
|                     | 8     | SnpMsgTscInfoReq       | SNP_MSG_TSC_INFO_REQ guest message      |
|                     | 7     | SnpMsgAbsorbNomaReq    | SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_REQ guest message   |
|                     | 6     | SnpMsgVmrkReq          | SNP_MSG_VMRK_REQ guest message          |
|                     | 5     | –                      | Reserved (MSG_ABSORB_REQ)               |
|                     | 4     | –                      | Reserved (MSG_IMPORT_REQ)               |
|                     | 3     | SnpMsgExportReq        | SNP_MSG_EXPORT_REQ guest message        |
|                     | 2     | SnpMsgReportReq        | SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ guest message        |
|                     | 1     | SnpMsgKeyReq           | SNP_MSG_KEY_REQ guest message           |
|                     | 0     | SnpMsgCpuidReq         | SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ guest message         |
| Fn8000_0024_EBX_x01 | 31:0  | –                      | Reserved                                |
| Fn8000_0024_ECX_x01 | 31:0  | –                      | Reserved                                |
| Fn8000_0024_EDX_x01 | 31:0  | –                      | Reserved                                |

---

## Chapter 5 Page Management

---

### 5.1 Page Security Attributes

The Reverse Map Table (RMP) is a structure that resides in DRAM and maps system physical addresses (sPAs) to guest physical addresses (gPAs). There is only one RMP for the entire system, which is configured using x86 model specific registers (MSRs). See [APM] volume 2, Section 15.36, for details.

Each RMP entry is indexed by the sPA page. The RMP, combined with all guests' nested page tables, creates a global one-to-one mapping between sPAs and gPAs. That is, the RMP ensures that a page cannot be mapped into multiple guests at once, and it cannot be mapped multiple times into a single guest at once.

The RMP also contains various security attributes of each that are managed by the hypervisor through hardware-mediated and firmware-mediated controls. The fields of an RMP entry are described in [APM] volume 2, Section 15.36.3.

### 5.2 RMP Initialization

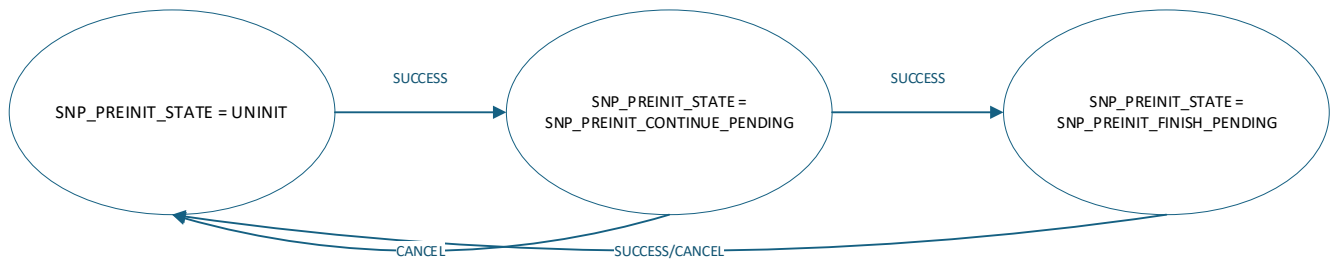
This section describes two mechanisms to initialize the RMP.

The duration of the `SNP_INIT_EX` command increases corresponding to the increase in the size of RMP-protected memory. The duration required is due to the requirement that the entire RMP must be written by SEV firmware.

The `SNP_INIT_EX` command requires that the `VM_HSAVE_PA` MSR is set to 0h. The `VM_HSAVE_PA` MSR stores the physical address where host processor state information can be stored. This requirement forces guests to be suspended for the entire time the RMP initialization is in progress.

These sections describe additional commands, and additional software flows which reduces the amount of time that software must ensure guest execution is suspended (i.e., guest not scheduled).

Each of these mechanisms reduce the duration of time in which the hypervisor must suspend running (non-SNP) guests. One mechanism is designed to initialize a non-segmented RMP, and the other mechanism is designed to initialize a segmented RMP. In both cases, the RMP is initialized before `SNP_INIT_EX` is invoked, and software sets `INIT_RMP` to 0 when it invokes `SNP_INIT_EX`. In that regard, three new commands are defined that will allow software to pre-initialize the RMP whether it is segmented or not: `SNP_INIT_START`, `SNP_INIT_CONTINUE` and `SNP_INIT_FINISH`. The appropriate state transitions are depicted below:



**Figure 1 RMP Pre-Initialization State Transitions**

### 5.2.1 Non-Segmented RMP

Software will invoke the `SNP_INIT_START` command to initialize the contents of the RMP, at which point guests cannot run. However, guests can resume as necessary after `SNP_INIT_START` completes. SNP FW will maintain the RMP initialization status using the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` register, which is accessible by SW. Based on the pre-initialization state, SW then must invoke the `SNP_INIT_CONTINUE` command wherein FW will initialize RMP entries, invalidate TLB entries and restore the `VM_HSAVE` page addresses accordingly. After `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is updated to reflect that SNP pre-initialization is ready to complete, then SW will invoke the `SNP_INIT_FINISH` command. Guests once again are suspended until this command is complete (as reflected by the state register).

`SNP_INIT_START` can only be executed in the UNINIT state and must be the first command invoked when RMP pre-initialization is desired. An SEV firmware global flag, `SNP_PRE_INIT_STATE`, indicates whether `SNP_INIT_START` can be invoked. This flag must also be in the UNINIT state. The Hypervisor must then enable SNP (set `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` MSR) and invoke `SNP_INIT_START`. All guests are suspended after this command is invoked.

`SNP_INIT_START` performs the following actions:

1. Checks that the SNP platform is in the UNINIT state.
2. Checks that `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is in the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE_UNINIT` state.
3. Checks that RMP table has not been initialized.
4. Checks that the `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` flag is set for all CPU cores.
5. Disables `RMPUPDATE` and `VM_HSAVE_PA`.
6. Checks `VM_HSAVE_PA` is 0h for all CPU cores (i.e., no guest is running and host state save feature is disabled).
7. Enables memory protection using hardware-enforced memory fencing.
8. Enables `VM_HSAVE_PA` but keeps `RMPUPDATE` disabled.
9. Sets `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` to `SNP_PREINIT_CONTINUE_PENDING`

Guests can resume at this point. However, the RMP is not yet initialized and SW must invoke `SNP_INIT_CONTINUE` based on the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE = SNP_PREINIT_CONTINUE_PENDING` flag. Guests will once again be disabled (i.e., `VM_HSAVE_PA` not writeable by host).

SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE results in the following actions:

1. Checks that SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING
2. If (CANCEL) then abort pre-init.
  - a. Marks internally that the RMP must be re-initialized.
  - b. Clears SYS\_CFG[SNPEn] on all cores.
  - c. Re-enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE
  - d. Clears SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING flag
  - e. Returns SUCCESS to caller. Guests can resume.
3. Disables VM\_HSAVE\_PA
4. Initializes the RMP
5. Enables VM\_HSAVE\_PA
6. Set SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE to SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_PENDING.

The SNP\_INIT\_FINISH command must now be invoked to complete RMP pre-initialization. SNP\_INIT\_FINISH performs the following actions:

1. Checks that snp\_preinit\_state is SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_PENDING.
2. If CANCEL is set,
  - a. Marks internally that the RMP must be re-initialized.
  - b. Clears SYS\_CFG[SNPEn] on all cores.
  - c. Re-enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE
  - d. Clears SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING flag
  - e. Returns SUCCESS to caller. Guests can resume.
3. Disable VM\_HSAVE\_PA
4. Check VM\_HSAVE\_PA is 0h across all cores. (no guest can run).
5. Marks internally that the RMP does not need to be re-initialized.
6. Enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE
7. Set SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE to SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_COMPLETE.
8. SNP\_INIT\_EX can now be invoked with RMP\_INIT = 0 (RMP has been initialized).

### 5.2.2 Segmented RMP

As with non-segmented RMP, pre-initialization of segmented RMP required invocation of SNP\_INIT\_START, SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE and SNP\_INIT\_FINISH. However, based on the platform support of segmented RMP (RST, or reverse map segmented table), the sequence of actions taken by FW is different.

SNP\_INIT\_START can only be executed in the UNINIT state and must be the first command invoked when RMP pre-initialization is desired. An SEV firmware global flag, SNP\_PRE\_INIT\_STATE, indicates whether SNP\_INIT\_START can be invoked. This flag must also be in the UNINIT state. The Hypervisor must then enable SNP (set SYS\_CFG[SNPEn]) and invoke SNP\_INIT\_START. All guests are suspended after this command is invoked.

SNP\_INIT\_START performs the following actions:

1. Checks that the SNP platform is in the UNINIT state.
2. Checks that SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is in the SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE\_UNINIT state.
3. Checks that the SYS\_CFG[SNPEn] flag is set for all CPU cores.
4. Disable RMPUPDATE and VM\_HSAVE\_PA.
5. Check VM\_HSAVE\_PA is 0h for all CPU cores (i.e., no guest is running and host state save feature is disabled).
6. Validate RST or return ERROR.
7. Enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA but keep RMPUPDATE disabled.
8. Set SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE to SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING

Guests can resume at this point. However, RST is not yet initialized and SW must invoke SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE based on the SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE = SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING. Guests will once again be disabled (i.e. VM\_HSAVE\_PA not writeable by host).

SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE performs the following actions:

1. Checks that SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING
2. If (CANCEL) then abort pre-init.
  - a. Marks internally that the RST must be re-initialized.
  - b. Clears SYS\_CFG[SNPEn] on all cores.
  - c. Re-enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE
  - d. Clears SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING flag
  - e. Returns SUCCESS to caller. Guests can resume.
3. Disable VM\_HSAVE\_PA
4. Initialize RST.
5. Check that the pages pointed to by VM\_HSAVE\_PA (non-zero values) are in the HYPERVISOR or default state.
6. Removes any memory protection that prevents the CPU from reading and writing the RST.
7. Enable VM\_HSAVE\_PA
8. Set SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE to SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_PENDING.

At this point, guests may be resumed as VM\_HSAVE\_PA has been re-enabled. However, pre-initialization is not complete. The SNP\_INIT\_FINISH command must now be invoked in order to complete RST pre-initialization.

SNP\_INIT\_FINISH performs the following actions:

1. Checks that SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_PENDING.
2. If CANCEL is set,
  - a. Marks internally that the RST must be re-initialized.
  - b. Clears SYS\_CFG[SNPEn] on all cores.
  - c. Re-enables VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE.
  - d. Clears SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING flag.

- e. Returns SUCCESS to caller. Guests can resume.
- 3. Disables VM\_HSAVE\_PA.
- 4. Checks VM\_HSAVE\_PA is 0h across all cores. (no guest can run).
- 5. Marks internally that the RST does not need to be re-initialized.
- 6. Enables VM\_HSAVE\_PA and RMPUPDATE.
- 7. Set SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE to SNP\_PREINIT\_FINISH\_COMPLETE.
- 8. SNP\_INIT\_EX can now be invoked with RMP\_INIT = 0 (RMP has been initialized).

## 5.3 Page States

A page's state is completely determined by the fields in the page's RMP entry. Specifically, the page state depends on the Assigned, Validated, ASID, Immutable, GPA, and VMSA RMP entry fields. *Table 14 below* enumerates and defines each of the page states.

**Note:** (–) in a cell indicates that the page state is not dependent on that field.

**Table 14. Page State Definitions**

| Page State    | Assigned              | Validated | ASID | Immutable | GPA | VMSA |
|---------------|-----------------------|-----------|------|-----------|-----|------|
| Hypervisor    | 0                     | 0         | 0    | 0         | –   | –    |
| HV-fixed      | 0                     | 0         | 0    | 1         | –   | –    |
| Reclaim       | 1                     | 0         | 0    | 0         | –   | –    |
| Firmware      | 1                     | 0         | 0    | 1         | 0   | 0    |
| Context       | 1                     | 0         | 0    | 1         | 0   | 1    |
| Metadata      | 1                     | 0         | 0    | 1         | >0  | –    |
| Pre-Guest     | 1                     | 0         | >0   | 1         | –   | –    |
| Guest-Invalid | 1                     | 0         | >0   | 0         | –   | –    |
| Pre-Swap      | 1                     | 1         | >0   | 1         | –   | –    |
| Guest-Valid   | 1                     | 1         | >0   | 0         | –   | –    |
| Default       | See discussion below. |           |      |           |     |      |

A Hypervisor page is used by the hypervisor for its normal execution. SNP places no restrictions on the use of Hypervisor pages for purposes outside of managing SNP guests. A Default page is a page that does not have an RMP entry. Pages do not have an RMP entry if the sPA indexes to an entry past the end of the RMP table - that is, past RMP\_END. Default pages have the same access permissions as a Hypervisor page but cannot be transitioned to any other page state.

A HV-fixed page is used by the hypervisor for its normal execution. It also may be used with other SoC services, such as the non-SNP commands to the ASP. The RMPUPDATE instruction cannot create HV-fixed pages. Instead, software should use SNP\_PAGE\_SET\_STATE or SNP\_INIT\_EX with a list of the ranges that should be transitioned to HV-fixed. Once in the HV-fixed state, a page remains there until the RMP is reinitialized.

Pages in the firmware state are owned by the firmware. Because the RMP.Immu bit is set, the hypervisor cannot write to Firmware pages nor alter the RMP entry with the RMPUPDATE instruction. A Firmware page is used by the hypervisor to donate writeable memory to the firmware to operate on. Such pages may be used to output data to the hypervisor or to transition into a special page state, such as Metadata pages or Context pages.

When an immutable page is returned to the hypervisor by the firmware, the page is transitioned into the Reclaim page state. The Reclaim page state can then be transitioned to other nonimmutable pages by the hypervisor using RMPUPDATE.

A Context page is a firmware-owned page that contains all context information of a guest. The format of the Context page is implementation specific. The content of a Context page is encrypted, and integrity protected so that the hypervisor cannot read or write to it.

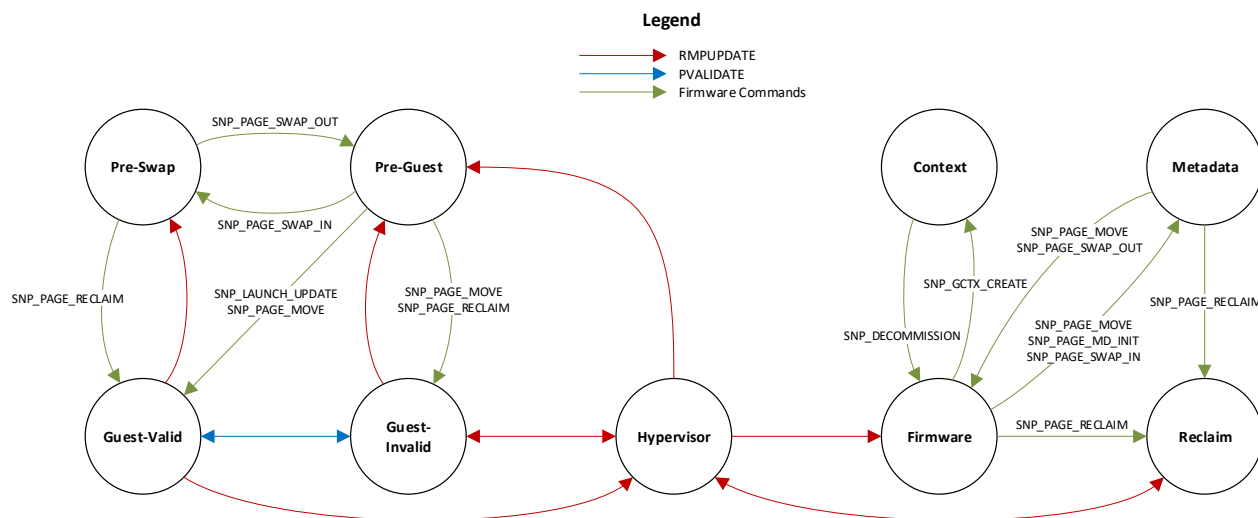
A Metadata page is a firmware-owned page that contains the metadata of a swapped-out page. Metadata pages have a well-defined format. The firmware converts a Firmware page into a Metadata page by making the GPA field non-zero.

A Guest-Invalid page has been donated to the guest but not yet validated by the guest. If the hypervisor wishes to have the firmware operate on them, the hypervisor transitions the page into a Pre-Guest page.

Similarly, a Guest-Valid page has been donated to the guest, and the guest has validated the page. If the hypervisor wishes to have the firmware operate on them, the hypervisor transitions the page into a Pre-Swap page.

### 5.3.1 Page State Transitions

The only ways in which a page can transition between states are by invoking the RMPUPDATE and PVALIDATE instructions or by issuing firmware commands described in this specification. The hardware and firmware mediate all page state transitions to ensure that only secure state transitions occur.



**Figure 2. SNP Page State Machine**

Red edges in *Figure 2* represent hypervisor actions. Blue edges represent guest actions. Green edges represent firmware commands specified in this document.

*Note:* Some transitive RMPUPDATE edges are omitted for clarity.

Actions that trigger a page state transition are depicted in *Figure 2*. The following subsections describe the transitions in further detail. Notably, the following subsections do not describe the Default page state because Default pages cannot transition to other page states.

### 5.3.2 RMPUPDATE

The RMPUPDATE instruction may be used by the hypervisor to alter the RMP entries of pages. This allows the hypervisor to directly alter the state of most pages.

Notably, RMPUPDATE can invalidate a page but cannot validate a page. This means that the hypervisor cannot produce pages in the Pre-Swap or Guest-Valid states without assistance from a guest or from the PSP firmware.

Also, RMPUPDATE cannot affect the page state of an immutable page. A hypervisor can produce pages in the Pre-Guest or Pre-Swap states with RMPUPDATE. However, once in those states, the hypervisor must rely on the PSP firmware to transition them.

### 5.3.3 PVALIDATE

The PVALIDATE instruction may be used by a guest to alter the Validated flag of a page. This allows a guest to signal to the hardware and firmware that the page at a specified gPA is validated, that is, the guest expects the hardware and firmware to protect the integrity of the page.

Because PVALIDATE can be executed only within the guest, PVALIDATE can operate only on pages addressable within the guest's physical address space. Further, Pre-Guest and Pre-Swap pages have their RMP.Immutable flags equal to 1, which prevents the guest from transitioning them.

### 5.3.4 Additional Page Management x86 Instructions

Additional x86 instructions are available for the Guest and the Host OS to perform Page Management. These instructions are described in [APM] volume 3.

### 5.3.5 Page Management Commands

The hypervisor can invoke the commands described in this specification to manage memory without violating the security provided by SNP.

The hypervisor must perform these actions using RMPUPDATE. This restriction allows RMPUPDATE to mediate all reassignments of pages so that the appropriate TLB and cache operations happen.

### 5.3.6 Launch Commands

The SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE command transitions a page from the Firmware state to the Context state. This is the only way a Context page can be created.

The launch commands, specifically SNP\_LAUNCH\_UPDATE, take unencrypted guest pages and convert them into encrypted pages. In doing so, this command also transitions the launched pages to Guest-Valid pages.

### 5.3.7 Guest Request Commands

Neither the SNP\_GUEST\_REQUEST command itself nor any of the guest messages alter the state of the pages passed to it.

### 5.3.8 Platform Commands

SNP\_INIT initializes the state of all pages within the system by initializing the RMP. Other platform commands do not alter the state of any page.

### 5.3.9 SEV Legacy Commands

The behavior of the SEV-legacy commands is altered when the SNP firmware is in the INIT state. In this case, the SEV-legacy commands require any page that the SEV-legacy command writes to be a Firmware or Default page.

When the RMP has been initialized, as reported by `SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS`, any invocation of the SEV-legacy commands `INIT` and `INIT_EX` require that `TMR_PADDR` must be 2 MB aligned instead of 1 MB, and `TMR_LENGTH` must be 2 MB instead of 1 MB.

When `SNP` is in the `INIT` state, the SEV-legacy command `INIT` will check that the buffer addressed by the `TMR_PADDR` parameter resides entirely inside Firmware pages.

## 5.4 Metadata Entries

A metadata entry contains security attributes associated with a swapped-out page. A Metadata page can describe three types of swapped-out pages: Data pages, Metadata pages, or VMSA pages. Each page type determines how the metadata entry is constructed.

Table 15 below describes the contents of a metadata entry. All references to RMP fields or addresses refer to the attributes of the page at the time the hypervisor swapped it out.

**Table 15. Contents of Metadata Entries for Swapped-Out Data Pages, VMSA Pages, and Metadata Pages**

| Field                       | Data Page                                                  | VMSA Page                                                  | Metadata Page              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>SOFTWARE_DATA</code>  | Software-provided data                                     | Software-provided data                                     | Software-provided data     |
| <code>IV</code>             | Initialization vector                                      | Initialization vector                                      | Initialization vector      |
| <code>AUTH_TAG</code>       | Authentication tag                                         | Authentication tag                                         | Authentication tag         |
| <code>PAGE_SIZE</code>      | <code>RMP.Page_Size</code>                                 | <code>RMP.Page_Size</code>                                 | <code>RMP.Page_Size</code> |
| <code>VALID</code>          | 1                                                          | 1                                                          | 1                          |
| <code>METADATA</code>       | 0                                                          | 0                                                          | 1                          |
| <code>VMSA</code>           | 0                                                          | 1                                                          | 0                          |
| <code>GPA</code>            | gPA of the page                                            | gPA of the page                                            | <code>PADDR_INVALID</code> |
| <code>PAGE_VALIDATED</code> | <code>RMP.Validated</code>                                 | <code>RMP.Validated</code>                                 | 0                          |
| <code>VMPL0</code>          | <code>RMP.VMPL0</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | <code>RMP.VMPL0</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | 0h                         |
| <code>VMPL1</code>          | <code>RMP.VMPL1</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | <code>RMP.VMPL1</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | 0h                         |
| <code>VMPL2</code>          | <code>RMP.VMPL2</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | <code>RMP.VMPL2</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | 0h                         |
| <code>VMPL3</code>          | <code>RMP.VMPL3</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | <code>RMP.VMPL3</code> if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. | 0h                         |
| Reserved fields             | 0h                                                         | 0h                                                         | 0h                         |

The hypervisor may request that the firmware place data into `SOFTWARE_DATA` for its own purposes. The firmware never interprets this field. Because the hypervisor can read the metadata entries in Metadata pages, the hypervisor can use `SOFTWARE_DATA` for its own bookkeeping purposes.

An entry with `VALID` set to 0h is invalid and does not refer to any swapped-out page. When `VALID` is set to 0, the firmware does not interpret any other fields in the entry.

## Chapter 6 Mailbox Protocol

Software on the x86 CPUs communicates with the PSP through a set of MMIO registers, referred to as mailbox registers. This ABI used the mailbox protocol defined in Chapter 4 of [SEV]. This ABI adds new commands and status codes, which extend the SEV mailbox protocol. These command and status codes are described in the following sections.

### 6.1 Command Identifier

This ABI adds many new commands to be handled by the mailbox protocol. *Table 16 below* summarizes the additional commands and their identifiers. See the command definitions for further details.

**Table 16. Command Identifiers**

| Command             | ID  | Description                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SNP_INIT            | 81h | Initialize platform for SNP.                                                                                         |
| SNP_SHUTDOWN        | 82h | Un-initialize platform for SNP.                                                                                      |
| SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS | 83h | Query platform information.                                                                                          |
| SNP_DF_FLUSH        | 84h | Flush data fabric buffers.                                                                                           |
| SNP_INIT_EX         | 85h | Initialize platform for SNP with extended parameters.                                                                |
| SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX     | 86h | Shut down the platform with extended capabilities to shut down SNP-enforcing controls such as IOMMU SNP enforcement. |
| SNP_INIT_START      | 87h | Initializes the RMP while SYS_CFG[SNPE] is not set                                                                   |
| SNP_INIT_CONTINUE   | 88h | Continues the initialization of the RMP                                                                              |
| SNP_INIT_FINISH     | 89h | The last command invoked in creation of an RMP                                                                       |
| SNP_DECOMMISSION    | 90h | Destroy a guest context.                                                                                             |
| SNP_ACTIVATE        | 91h | Assign an ASID to a guest.                                                                                           |
| SNP_GUEST_STATUS    | 92h | Query guest information.                                                                                             |
| SNP_GCTX_CREATE     | 93h | Create a guest context.                                                                                              |
| SNP_GUEST_REQUEST   | 94h | Process a guest request.                                                                                             |
| SNP_ACTIVATE_EX     | 95h | Assign an ASID to a guest on select cores.                                                                           |
| SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ   | 96h | Host initiated request for the Guest attestation report.                                                             |
| SNP_TSC_INFO        | 97h | Host request for TSC information for a given guest.                                                                  |
| SNP_LAUNCH_START    | A0h | Begin to launch a new guest.                                                                                         |
| SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE   | A1h | Add memory to a launching guest.                                                                                     |
| SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH   | A2h | Complete launching a guest.                                                                                          |

| Command                | ID          | Description                                       |
|------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| SNP_DBG_DECRYPT        | B0h         | Decrypt guest memory for debugging.               |
| SNP_DBG_ENCRYPT        | B1h         | Encrypt guest memory for debugging.               |
| SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION  | B2h         | Check or perform vulnerability mitigations.       |
| SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT      | C0h         | Swap a page out of guest memory.                  |
| SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN       | C1h         | Swap a page into guest memory.                    |
| SNP_PAGE_MOVE          | C2h         | Move a Memory page.                               |
| SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT       | C3h         | Initialize a Metadata page.                       |
| SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE     | C6h         | Set the page state of a set of pages to HV-fixed. |
| SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM       | C7h         | Clear the immutable bit on a page.                |
| SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH       | C8h         | Convert a sequence of 4 k pages into a 2 MB page. |
| SNP_CONFIG             | C9h         | Set systemwide configuration values.              |
| DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX   | CAh         | Perform a live update of SNP firmware.            |
| SNP_COMMIT             | CBh         | Commit the current firmware.                      |
| SNP_VLEK_LOAD          | CDh         | Load the VLEK into the firmware.                  |
| FEATURE_INFO           | CEh         | Feature support information.                      |
| SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS_EX | CFh         | Query platform information that includes ETCB     |
| Reserved (SEV-TIO)     | D0h-<br>EFh | Reserved.                                         |
| SNP_CSVCEK_CERT        | F0h         | Get the CSVCEK certificate chain                  |
| SNP_GET_CORIM          | F1h         | Get the CoRIM ID list                             |
| SNP_GET_CSR            | F2h         | Get CSR for the LDevID certificate                |
| SNP_GET_TPM_INFO       | F3h         | Get TPM_INFO structure for a specific guest       |

## 6.2 Status Codes

This ABI introduces several new status codes to the mailbox protocol. *Table 17 below* summarizes the additional status codes added by this ABI.

**Table 17. Status Codes**

| Status              | Code | Description                      |
|---------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE   | 19h  | The RMP page size is incorrect.  |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE  | 1Ah  | The RMP page state is incorrect. |
| INVALID_MDATA_ENTRY | 1Bh  | The metadata entry is invalid.   |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER  | 1Ch  | The page ownership is incorrect. |

| Status            | Code | Description                                                               |
|-------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AEAD_OFLOW        | 1Dh  | The AEAD algorithm would have overflowed.                                 |
| EXIT_RING_BUFFER  | 1Fh  | Ring Buffer error.                                                        |
| RMP_INIT_REQUIRED | 20h  | The RMP must be reinitialized.                                            |
| BAD_SVN           | 21h  | SVN of provided image is lower than the committed SVN.                    |
| BAD_VERSION       | 22h  | Firmware version anti-rollback.                                           |
| SHUTDOWN_REQUIRED | 23h  | An invocation of SNP_SHUTDOWN is required to complete this action.        |
| UPDATE_FAILED     | 24h  | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| RESTORE_REQUIRED  | 25h  | Installation of the committed firmware image required.                    |
| RMP_INIT_FAILED   | 26h  | The RMP initialization failed.                                            |
| INVALID_KEY       | 27h  | The key requested is invalid, not present, or not allowed.                |

The existing SEV status codes are provided below for reference:

**Table 18. SEV Status Codes**

| Status                 | Code  | Description                                    |
|------------------------|-------|------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | 0000h | Successful completion                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | 0001h | The platform state is invalid for this command |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | 0002h | The guest state is invalid for this command    |
| INVALID_CONFIG         | 0003h | The platform configuration is invalid          |
| INVALID_LENGTH         | 0004h | A memory buffer is too small.                  |
| ALREADY_OWNED          | 0005h | The platform is already owned                  |
| INVALID_CERTIFICATE    | 0006h | The certificate is invalid                     |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | 0007h | Request is not allowed by guest policy         |
| INACTIVE               | 0008h | The guest is inactive                          |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | 0009h | The address provided is invalid                |
| BAD_SIGNATURE          | 000Ah | The provided signature is invalid              |
| BAD_MEASUREMENT        | 000Bh | The provided measurement is invalid            |
| ASID_OWNED             | 000Ch | The ASID is already owned                      |
| INVALID_ASID           | 000Dh | The ASID is invalid                            |
| WBINVD_REQUIRED        | 000Eh | WBINVD instruction required                    |
| DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED      | 000Fh | DF_FLUSH invocation required                   |
| INVALID_GUEST          | 0010h | The guest handle is invalid                    |

| Status              | Code  | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INVALID_COMMAND     | 0011h | The command issued is invalid.                                                                                                                                                     |
| ACTIVE              | 0012h | The guest is active.                                                                                                                                                               |
| HWERROR_PLATFORM    | 0013h | A hardware condition has occurred affecting the platform. It is safe to re-allocate parameter buffers.                                                                             |
| HWERROR_UNSAFE      | 0014h | A hardware condition has occurred affecting the platform. Re-allocating parameter buffers is not safe.                                                                             |
| UNSUPPORTED         | 0015h | Feature is unsupported.                                                                                                                                                            |
| INVALID_PARAM       | 0016h | A parameter is invalid.                                                                                                                                                            |
| RESOURCE_LIMIT      | 0017h | The SEV FW has run out of a resource necessary to complete the command.                                                                                                            |
| SECURE_DATA_INVALID | 0018h | The part-specific SEV data failed integrity checks.                                                                                                                                |
| RB_MODE_EXITED      | 001Fh | A Mailbox mode command was sent while the SEV firmware was in Ring Buffer mode. Ring Buffer mode has been exited; the Mailbox mode command has been ignored. Retry is recommended. |

---

## Chapter 7 Guest Messages

---

Guest messages provide the guest with a mechanism to communicate with the PSP without risk from a malicious hypervisor who wishes to read, alter, drop, or replay the messages sent. A guest may issue requests of firmware via the `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` command. This command constructs a trusted channel between the guest and the PSP firmware. The hypervisor cannot alter the messages without detection nor read the plain text of the messages.

The firmware constructs the channel using a Virtual Machine Platform Communication key (VMPCCK). Each guest has four VMPCCKs, which the firmware generates and provides to the guest in a special secrets page as part of the guest launch process (see `SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE` in *Section 8.18* for details). Only the guest and the firmware possess the VMPCCKs.

Each message contains a sequence number per VMPCCK. The sequence number is incremented with each message sent. Messages sent by the guest to the firmware and by the firmware to the guest must be delivered in order. If not, the firmware will reject subsequent messages by the guest when it detects that the sequence numbers are out of sync.

Each message is protected with Authenticated Encryption with Associated Data algorithm (AEAD), namely AES-256 GCM.

Details on how to send a message via the `SNP_GUEST_REQUEST` command can be found in *Section 8.27*.

### 7.1 CPUID Reporting

**Note:** This guest message may be removed in future versions as it is redundant with the CPUID page in `SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE`. (See *Section 8.18*.)

The firmware provides a service to guests to validate CPUID function values provided by the hypervisor. This ensures that CPUID function values provided by the hypervisor are within range of the hardware. To use this service, the guest constructs an `SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ` message.

The guest constructs an `SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ` message, which contains an array of CPUID function structures, as defined in *Table 19*. The guest fills the structure with the information the guest received from the CPUID instruction from the hypervisor.

The message contains enough space for `COUNT_MAX` function structures but only `COUNT` function structures are valid. `COUNT_MAX` is 64.

**Table 19. SNP\_MSG\_CPUID\_REQ Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name             | Description                                                                         |
|-------------|------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | COUNT            | Number of CPUID functions to validate. Must be less or equal to COUNT_MAX.          |
| 04h         | 31:0 | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                             |
| 08h         | 63:0 | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                             |
| 10h         |      | CPUID_FUNCTION[] | COUNT_MAX number of CPUID_FUNCTION records. Only the first COUNT records are valid. |

**Table 20. CPUID\_FUNCTION Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name    | Description                                  |
|-------------|------|---------|----------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | EAX_IN  | EAX input parameter to CPUID.                |
| 04h         | 31:0 | ECX_IN  | ECX input parameter to CPUID.                |
| 08h         | 63:0 | XCRO_IN | XCRO at the time of CPUID execution.         |
| 10h         | 63:0 | XSS_IN  | IA32_XSS MSR at the time of CPUID execution. |
| 18h         | 31:0 | EAX     | EAX output parameter of CPUID.               |
| 1Ch         | 31:0 | EBX     | EBX output parameter of CPUID.               |
| 20h         | 31:0 | ECX     | ECX output parameter of CPUID.               |
| 24h         | 31:0 | EDX     | EDX output parameter of CPUID.               |
| 28h         | 63:0 | –       | Reserved. Must be zero.                      |

The firmware returns an SNP\_MSG\_CPUID\_RSP message as defined in *Table 21*.

*SNP\_MSG\_CPUID\_RSP Structure.* The message contains the same CPUID function structures that may be altered by the firmware. The firmware will alter the function structure when the hypervisor has provided an insecure value.

If firmware encounters a CPUID function that is not in the standard range (Fn0000\_0000 through Fn0000\_FFFF) or the extended range (Fn8000\_0000 through Fn8000\_FFFF), the firmware does not perform any checks on the function output.

If firmware encounters a CPUID function that is in the standard or extended ranges, then the firmware performs a check to ensure that the provided output would not lead to an insecure guest state. If insecure function output is identified, the firmware sets the field in the response message to an acceptable value.

**Note:** Some functions have multiple acceptable values, and the firmware may choose any one of them.

The firmware then returns INVALID\_PARAM in the STATUS field of the response message.

The policy used by the firmware to assess CPUID function output can be found in the [PPR].

**Table 21. SNP\_MSG\_CPUID\_RSP Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name             | Description                                                                              |
|-------------|------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | STATUS           | The status of the CPUID reporting operation.<br>0h: Success.<br>16h: Invalid parameters. |
| 04h         | 31:0 | COUNT            | Number of CPUID functions that have been validated.                                      |
| 08h         | 63:0 | —                | Reserved.                                                                                |
| 10h         |      | CPUID_FUNCTION[] | COUNT_MAX number of CPUID_FUNCTION records. Only the first COUNT records are valid.      |

## 7.2 Key Derivation

The guest can ask the firmware to provide a key derived from a root key. This key may be used by the guest for any purpose it chooses such as sealing keys or communicating with external entities.

The data that the firmware mixes into the derived key are described in *Table 22 below*. The firmware unconditionally mixes some of the fields into the key while the guest may optionally select and even supply other data to mix into the key.

**Table 22. Data Mixed into the Derived Guest Key**

| Data                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                   | Mix Type | Provided in Message |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| VCEK/VLEK/VMRK        | VCEK, VLEK, or VMRK of the guest. The guest selects which of the keys is used.                                                                                                | Always   | No                  |
| VMPL                  | The VMPL selected by the guest.                                                                                                                                               | Always   | Yes                 |
| Host Data             | The host data provided at launch.                                                                                                                                             | Always   | No                  |
| ID Key/<br>Author Key | The author key provided at launch. If an author key was not provided, then the firmware uses the ID key instead.                                                              | Always   | No                  |
| Guest Field Selection | A bitmask describing which of the fields in this table are mixed into the key. This covers the guest-selectable fields as well as other field selection done by the firmware. | Always   | Yes                 |
| TCB Version           | The TCB version selected by the guest.                                                                                                                                        | Optional | Yes                 |
| Guest SVN             | SVN of the guest.                                                                                                                                                             | Optional | Yes                 |
| Measurement           | The measurement of the guest at launch.                                                                                                                                       | Optional | No                  |
| Family ID             | The family ID provided at launch.                                                                                                                                             | Optional | No                  |
| Image ID              | The image ID provided at launch.                                                                                                                                              | Optional | No                  |

| Data                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Mix Type | Provided in Message |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| Guest Policy             | The guest policy provided at launch.                                                                                                                                                                                              | Optional | No                  |
| Mitigation Launch Vector | The mitigation vector. The guest is not allowed to set any bits in this key derivation vector (LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR) that were not originally set in SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION's MIT_VERIFIED_VECTOR at the time the Guest was launched. | Optional | Yes                 |
| ETCB Version             | The ETCB version selected by the guest.                                                                                                                                                                                           | Optional | Yes                 |

Table 23 below describes the SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_REQ message structure that the guest sends to the firmware to request a derived key.

**Table 23. SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_REQ Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:4 | —                  | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|             | 3    | ETCB_SEL           | 0: ETCB_VERSION not included<br>1: ETCB_VERSION included                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|             | 2:1  | KEY_SEL            | 0: Derive with VLEK if VLEK is installed. Otherwise, derive with the key indicated by CsVcekPref.<br>1: Derive with legacy VCEK.<br>2: Derive with VLEK.<br>3: Derive with chip secret VCEK.                                                                           |
|             | 0    | ROOT_KEY_SELECT    | Selects the root key from which to derive the key. 0 indicates VCEK. 1 indicates VMRK.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 4h          | 31:0 | —                  | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 8h          | 63:0 | GUEST_FIELD_SELECT | Bitmask indicating which data will be mixed into the derived key. See Table 24 for the structure of this bitmask.                                                                                                                                                      |
| 10h         | 31:0 | VMPL               | The VMPL to mix into the derived key. Must be greater than or equal to the current VMPL.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 14h         | 31:0 | GUEST_SVN          | The guest SVN to mix into the key. Must not exceed the guest SVN provided at launch in the ID block.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 18h         | 63:0 | TCB_VERSION        | The TCB version to mix into the derived key. Must not exceed LaunchTcb.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 20h         | 63:0 | LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR  | The mitigation vector value to mix into the derived key. Specific bit settings corresponding to mitigations required for Guest operation.<br><br><b>Note:</b> The guest is not allowed to set any bits in this key derivation vector (LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR) that were not |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name         | Description                                                               |
|-------------|-------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |       |              | <i>originally set in the launch mitigation vector.</i>                    |
| 28h         | 63:0  | —            | Reserved. Must be zero                                                    |
| 30h         | 128:0 | —            | Reserved. Must be zero                                                    |
| 40h         | 255:0 | ETCB_VERSION | The ETCB version to mix into the derived key. Must not exceed LaunchETcb. |

If ROOT\_KEY\_SELECT is 0 and GCTX.MaReportIdValid of the requesting guest is 1 then the firmware returns the INVALID\_KEY status code to the guest.

If ROOT\_KEY\_SELECT is 0 and MaskChipKey is 1, the firmware returns the INVALID\_KEY status code to the guest.

If ROOT\_KEY\_SELECT is 0, the key used is further selected by the KEY\_SEL parameter. The firmware returns INVALID\_KEY to the guest if any of the following conditions occur:

- KEY\_SEL is 0, VcekDis is 1, and the VLEK is not installed.
- KEY\_SEL is 1, and VcekDis is 1.
- KEY\_SEL is 2, and the VLEK is not installed.
- KEY\_SEL is 3, and VcekDis is 1 or CsVcekEn is 0.

This guest message requesting to provide a derived key will contain a flag indicating whether the guest wants to make use of the chip secret VCEK or legacy-derived VCEK. The key selection based on CSVCEK options and KEY\_SEL is summarized in *Section 8.33*.

The KEY\_SEL parameter was introduced in version 1.54.

The SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_REQ detailed in *Table 23* describes the SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_REQ message structure that the guest sends to the firmware to request a derived key. GUEST\_FIELD\_SELECT indicates which guest-selectable fields will be mixed into the key that is described in *Table 24* below.

**Table 24. Structure of the GUEST\_FIELD\_SELECT Field**

| Bits | Field             | Description                                                                     |
|------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63:7 | —                 | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |
| 6    | LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR | Indicates that the guest-provided LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR will be mixed into the key. |
| 5    | TCB_VERSION       | Indicates that the guest-provided TCB_VERSION will be mixed into the key.       |
| 4    | GUEST_SVN         | Indicates that the guest-provided SVN will be mixed into the key.               |
| 3    | MEASUREMENT       | Indicates the measurement of the guest during launch will be mixed              |

| Bits | Field        | Description                                                          |
|------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      |              | into the key.                                                        |
| 2    | FAMILY_ID    | Indicates the family ID of the guest will be mixed into the key.     |
| 1    | IMAGE_ID     | Indicates that the image ID of the guest will be mixed into the key. |
| 0    | GUEST_POLICY | Indicates that the guest policy will be mixed into the key.          |

The firmware returns the SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_RSP message defined in *Table 25 below* to the guest.

**Table 25. SNP\_MSG\_KEY\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name        | Description                                                                                                        |
|-------------|-------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0  | STATUS      | The status of key derivation operation.<br>0h: Success.<br>16h: Invalid parameters.<br>27h: Invalid key selection. |
| 04h–1Fh     |       | –           | Reserved.                                                                                                          |
| 20h         | 255:0 | DERIVED_KEY | The requested derived key if STATUS is 0h.                                                                         |

## 7.3 Attestation

The requestor can request that the firmware construct a guest attestation report. External entities can use a guest attestation report to assure the identity and security configuration of the guest.

The Host OS can directly request that the firmware construct a similar Guest attestation report. See the SNP\_HV\_REPORT\_REQ command.

A guest requests an attestation report by constructing an SNP\_MSG\_REPORT\_REQ as specified in *Table 26*. The message contains data provided by the guest in REPORT\_DATA to be included in the report; the firmware does not interpret this data.

The guest sets the VMPL field to a value from 0 through 3 which indicates a request from the guest.

**Table 26. SNP\_MSG\_REPORT\_REQ Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name        | Description                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 511:0 | REPORT_DATA | Guest-provided data to be included in the attestation report.                                                     |
| 40h         | 31:0  | VMPL        | The VMPL to put in the attestation report. Must be greater than or equal to the current VMPL and, at most, three. |
| 44h         | 31:2  | –           | Reserved.                                                                                                         |
|             | 1:0   | KEY_SEL     | Selects which key to use for generating the signature.                                                            |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |      |      | 0: Sign with VLEK if VLEK is installed. Otherwise, sign with the key indicated by CsVcekPref.<br>1: Sign with legacy VCEK.<br>2: Sign with VLEK.<br>3: Sign with chip secret VCEK. |
| 48h–5Fh     | –    |      | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                            |

The guest may generate attestation reports for VMPLs that are greater than or equal to the current VMPL. The desired VMPL is provided by the guest in the request message.

Upon receiving a request for an attestation report, the firmware constructs the report according to *Table 27*.

The firmware generates a report ID for each guest that persists with the guest instance throughout its lifetime. In each attestation report, the report ID is placed in `REPORT_ID`. If the guest has an associated migration agent, the `REPORT_ID_MA` is filled in with the report ID of the migration agent.

If `MaskChipKey` is 0, the firmware signs the attestation report with either the VCEK or VLEK based on the key selection made in `KEY_SEL`. The firmware will return `INVALID_KEY` to the guest if any of the following conditions occur:

- `KEY_SEL` is 0, the VLEK is not loaded, and `VcekDis` is 1.
- `KEY_SEL` is 1 and `VcekDis` is 1.
- `KEY_SEL` is 2 and the VLEK is not loaded.
- `KEY_SEL` is 3, and `VcekDis` is 1 or `CsVcekEn` is 0.

This guest message requesting an attestation report will contain a flag indicating whether the guest wants to make use of the chip secret VCEK or legacy-derived VCEK. The key selection based on `CSVCEK` options and `KEY_SEL` is summarized in *Section 8.33*.

The firmware uses the systemwide `ReportedTcb` value as the TCB version to derive the VCEK, VLEK, or CSVCEK. This value is set by the hypervisor. The firmware guarantees that the `ReportedTcb` value is never greater than the installed TCB version.

If `MaskChipKey` is 1, the firmware writes zeroes into the `SIGNATURE` field instead of signing the report.

**Note:** All reserved fields in the attestation report should be checked to be zero by verifiers.

**Table 27. ATTESTATION\_REPORT Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0  | VERSION        | Version number of this attestation report. Set to 6h for this specification.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 04h         | 31:0  | GUEST_SVN      | The guest SVN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 08h         | 63:0  | POLICY         | The guest policy. See <i>Table 12</i> for a description of the guest policy structure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 10h         | 127:0 | FAMILY_ID      | The family ID provided at launch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 20h         | 127:0 | IMAGE_ID       | The image ID provided at launch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 30h         | 31:0  | VMPL           | The firmware sets this value depending on whether a guest (SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ) or host (SNP_HV_REPORT_REQ) requested the guest attestation report.<br>For a Guest requested attestation report this field will contain the value (0-3).<br>A Host requested attestation report will have a value of 0xffffffff. |
| 34h         | 31:0  | SIGNATURE_ALGO | The signature algorithm used to sign this report. See <i>Appendix B</i> for encodings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 38h         | 63:0  | CURRENT_TCB    | CurrentTcb.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 40h         | 63:0  | PLATFORM_INFO  | Information about the platform. See <i>Table 28</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 48h         | 31:6  | –              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|             | 5     | –              | Reserved                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|             | 4:2   | SIGNING_KEY    | Encodes the key used to sign this report.<br>0: Legacy VCEK.<br>1: VLEK.<br>2: Chip-secret VCEK.<br>3-6: Reserved.<br>7: None.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|             | 1     | MASK_CHIP_KEY  | The value of MaskChipKey.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|             | 0     | AUTHOR_KEY_EN  | Indicates that the digest of the author key is present in AUTHOR_KEY_DIGEST. Set to the value of GCTX.AuthorKeyEn.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4Ch         | 31:0  | –              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 50h         | 511:0 | REPORT_DATA    | If REQUEST_SOURCE is guest provided, then contains Guest-provided data, else host request and zero (0) filled by firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 90h         | 383:0 | MEASUREMENT    | The measurement calculated at launch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name               | Description                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C0h         | 255:0 | HOST_DATA          | Data provided by the hypervisor at launch.                                                                                            |
| E0h         | 383:0 | ID_KEY_DIGEST      | SHA-384 digest of the ID public key that signed the ID block provided in SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH.                                           |
| 110h        | 383:0 | AUTHOR_KEY_DIGEST  | SHA-384 digest of the Author public key that certified the ID key, if provided in SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH.<br>Zeroes if AUTHOR_KEY_EN is 1. |
| 140h        | 255:0 | REPORT_ID          | Report ID of this guest.                                                                                                              |
| 160h        | 255:0 | REPORT_ID_MA       | Report ID of this guest's migration agent.                                                                                            |
| 180h        | 63:0  | REPORTED_TCB       | Reported TCB version used to derive the VCEK that signed this report.                                                                 |
| 188h        | 7:0   | CPUID_FAM_ID       | Family ID (Combined Extended Family ID and Family ID)                                                                                 |
| 189h        | 7:0   | CPUID_MOD_ID       | Model (combined Extended Model and Model fields)                                                                                      |
| 18Ah        | 7:0   | CPUID_STEP         | Stepping.                                                                                                                             |
| 18Bh–19Fh   | –     | –                  | Reserved.                                                                                                                             |
| 1A0h–1DFh   | 511:0 | CHIP_ID            | If MaskChipId is set to 0, Identifier unique to the chip as output by GET_ID. Otherwise, set to 0h.                                   |
| 1E0h        | 63:0  | COMMITTED_TCB      | CommittedTcb.                                                                                                                         |
| 1E8h        | 7:0   | CURRENT_BUILD      | The build number of CurrentVersion.                                                                                                   |
| 1E9h        | 7:0   | CURRENT_MINOR      | The minor number of CurrentVersion.                                                                                                   |
| 1Eah        | 7:0   | CURRENT_MAJOR      | The major number of CurrentVersion.                                                                                                   |
| 1Ebh        | 7:0   | –                  | Reserved.                                                                                                                             |
| 1Ech        | 7:0   | COMMITTED_BUILD    | The build number of CommittedVersion.                                                                                                 |
| 1Edh        | 7:0   | COMMITTED_MINOR    | The minor version of CommittedVersion.                                                                                                |
| 1Eeh        | 7:0   | COMMITTED_MAJOR    | The major version of CommittedVersion.                                                                                                |
| 1Efh        | 7:0   | -                  | Reserved.                                                                                                                             |
| 1F0h        | 63:0  | LAUNCH_TCB         | The CommittedTcb at the time the guest was launched or imported.                                                                      |
| 1F8h        | 63:0  | LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR  | The verified mitigation vector value at the time the guest was launched (LaunchMitVector).                                            |
| 200h        | 63:0  | CURRENT_MIT_VECTOR | Value is set to the current verified mitigation vector value (CurrentMitVector).                                                      |
| 208h        | 192:0 | –                  | Reserved. MBZ.                                                                                                                        |
| 220h        | 255:0 | CURRENT_ETCB       | CurrentEtcB.                                                                                                                          |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name           | Description                                                                                                     |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |       |                | See Section 3.9.                                                                                                |
| 240h        | 255:0 | LAUNCH_ETCB    | LaunchEtcB at the time the guest was launched or imported.<br>See Section 3.9.                                  |
| 260h        | 255:0 | COMMITTED_ETCB | CommittedEtcB.<br>See Section 3.9                                                                               |
| 280h–29Fh   | –     | –              | Reserved. MBZ.                                                                                                  |
| 2A0h–49Fh   | –     | SIGNATURE      | Signature of bytes 0h to 29Fh inclusive of this report. The format of the signature is described in Appendix B. |

**Table 28. Structure of the PLATFORM\_INFO Field**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 63:8 | –                         | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 7    | TIO_EN                    | Indicates that SEV-TIO is enabled.                                                                                                                                    |
|             | 6    | IOMMU_WRITE_SAFE          | Indicates that platform has a hardware fix for CVE-2023-20585. Platforms without hardware fix use VerifyMitigation to indicate compliance.                            |
|             | 5    | ALIAS_CHECK_COMPL ETE     | Indicates that alias detection has completed since the last system reset and there are no aliasing addresses. Resets to 0.<br>Contains mitigation for CVE-2024-21944. |
|             | 4    | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN | Indicates ciphertext hiding is enabled for the DRAM.                                                                                                                  |
|             | 3    | RAPL_DIS                  | Indicates that the RAPL feature is disabled.                                                                                                                          |
|             | 2    | ECC_EN                    | Indicates that the platform is using error correcting codes for memory.<br>Present when EccMemReporting feature bit is set.                                           |
|             | 1    | TSME_EN                   | Indicates that TSME is enabled in the system.                                                                                                                         |
|             | 0    | SMT_EN                    | Indicates that SMT is enabled in the system.                                                                                                                          |

The firmware constructs an SNP\_MSG\_REPORT\_RSP message containing the generated attestation report as defined in Table 29.

**Table 29. SNP\_MSG\_REPORT\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name        | Description                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | STATUS      | The status of key derivation operation.<br>0h: Success.<br>16h: Invalid parameters.<br>27h: Invalid key selection. |
| 04h         | 31:0 | REPORT_SIZE | Size in bytes of the report.                                                                                       |
| 08h–1Fh     |      | –           | Reserved.                                                                                                          |
| 20h         |      | REPORT      | The attestation report generated by the firmware.                                                                  |

## 7.4 VM Export

When the hypervisor wishes to migrate a guest, it sends a request to that guest or its migration agent. The guest (or its migration agent) then sends the PSP a request message to export the guest's data. The format of this request is defined in *Table 30*.

**Table 30. SNP\_MSG\_EXPORT\_REQ Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name       | Description                                                                          |
|-------------|-------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page for the target guest to be exported. |
|             | 11:0  | –          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                              |
| 08h         | 31:1  | –          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                              |
|             | 0     | IMI_EN     | Unsupported. Must be zero.                                                           |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | –          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                              |

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, firmware returns an INVALID\_ADDRESS status.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a Context page. The firmware checks that either:

- The guest sending the message is the migration agent of the exported guest—that is, the GCTX.MaReportId of the provided guest context page matches the ReportId of the requesting guest's context page, or
- The guest sending the message has no migration agent and is exporting itself—that is, the GCTX\_PADDR matches the sPA of the requesting guest's context page, and GCTX.MaReportIdValid of the requesting guest is 0.

In summary, the guest can export itself if it has no migration agent. Otherwise, only its migration agent can export it. If either check fails, firmware returns an INVALID\_GUEST status.

If the guest is exporting itself, the firmware checks that the guest message was encrypted with VMPCCK0. That is, only VMPL0 can self-export. If not, firmware returns an INVALID\_GUEST status.

The firmware checks that the guest to be exported is in the GSTATE\_RUNNING state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST\_STATE.

The firmware responds with an SNP\_MSG\_EXPORT\_RSP message containing the guest context defined in *Table 31 below*. The size of the payload is such that HDR\_SIZE + MSG\_SIZE is 4096. That is, the message fills a 4 KB page.

**Table 31. SNP\_MSG\_EXPORT\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name         | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | STATUS       | The status of the attestation request.<br>0h: Success.<br>16h: Invalid parameters. |
| 04h         | 31:0 | GCTX_SIZE    | Size in bytes of the guest context stored in GCTX.                                 |
| 08h         | 31:0 | GCTX_VERSION | Version of the GCTX field. Set to 4h for this ABI version.                         |
| 0Ch–1Fh     |      | –            | Reserved.                                                                          |
| 20h–39Fh    |      | GCTX         | Guest context. See <i>Table 32 below</i> for the format of this field.             |

If the exported guest supports the Secure TSC feature, the caller of this guest request should update the guest context before migration as follows:

$$\text{PspTscOffset} = \text{PspTscOffset} + (\text{TSC} / \text{GUEST\_TSC\_FREQ}) * \text{DesiredTscFreq}$$

where the RDTSC instruction invocation and the GUEST\_TSC\_FREQ MSR read occurs within the guest that sent this message.

**Table 32. GCTX Field Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name     | Description                                           |
|-------------|-------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 000h        | 383:0 | LD       | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field. |
| 030h        | 255:0 | OEK      |                                                       |
| 050h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK0  |                                                       |
| 070h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK1  |                                                       |
| 090h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK2  |                                                       |
| 0B0h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK3  |                                                       |
| 0D0h        | 255:0 | VMRK     |                                                       |
| 0F0h        | 255:0 | HostData |                                                       |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name              | Description                                                                                               |
|-------------|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 110h        | 383:0 | IDKeyDigest       |                                                                                                           |
| 140h        | 383:0 | AuthorKeyDigest   |                                                                                                           |
| 170h        | 255:0 | ReportID          |                                                                                                           |
| 190h        | 383:0 | IMD               | Unsupported. Must be zero.                                                                                |
| 1C0h        | 63:0  | MsgCount0         |                                                                                                           |
| 1C8h        | 63:0  | MsgCount1         |                                                                                                           |
| 1D0h        | 63:0  | MsgCount2         |                                                                                                           |
| 1D8h        | 63:0  | MsgCount3         |                                                                                                           |
| 1E0h        |       | RootMDEntry       | See <i>Section 5.1</i> for description of this field. If IMI_EN is set, then this field is set to 0h.     |
| 220h        | 63:6  | —                 | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                   |
|             | 5     | CsvcekEn          | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
|             | 4     | CsVcekPref        | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
|             | 3     | —                 | Reserved                                                                                                  |
|             | 2     | VCEK_DIS          | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
|             | 1     | IDBlockEn         | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
|             | 0     | AuthorKeyEn       | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 228h        | 63:0  | Policy            | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 230h        | 7:0   | State             | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 238h        | 63:0  | OeklvCount        | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 240h-29Fh   |       | IDBlock           | See <i>Section 8.1</i> for the description of this field and <i>Table 57</i> for the format of the field. |
| 2A0h        | 127:0 | GOSVW             | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 2B0h        | 31:0  | DesiredTscFreq    | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 2B4h        | 31:0  | —                 | Reserved.                                                                                                 |
| 2B8h        | 63:0  | PspTscOffset      | See <i>Section 4.1</i> for description of this field.                                                     |
| 2C0h        | 63:0  | LaunchTcb         | The CurrentTcb at the time the guest was launched.                                                        |
| 2C8h        | 63:0  | LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR | The mitigation vector value at the time the guest was launched (LaunchMitVector).                         |
| 2D0h        | 15:0  | —                 | Reserved, future use.                                                                                     |
| 2D2h        | 111:0 | —                 | Reserved, MBZ                                                                                             |
| 2E0h        | 255:0 | —                 | Reserved, future use.                                                                                     |
| 300h        | 511:0 | —                 | Reserved, future use.                                                                                     |
| 340h        | 255:0 | LaunchEtcB        | The CurrentEtcB at the time the guest was launched.                                                       |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description    |
|-------------|------|------|----------------|
| 360h – 37Fh |      | –    | Reserved. MBZ. |

**Note:** If the hypervisor relies on the *VcekDis* to migrate accurately, the hypervisor must trust the migration agent to not alter the *VcekDis* flag in the guest context.

## 7.5 VM Import

Receiving a migrated guest from another system by the hypervisor with the help of the migration agent is deprecated, along with the corresponding `SNP_MSG_IMPORT_REQ` message.

The firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM` if this message is sent.

## 7.6 VM Absorb

An accelerated guest migration with an IMI is deprecated, along with the corresponding `SNP_MSG_ABSORB_REQ` message.

The firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM` if this message is sent.

## 7.7 VM Absorb – No Migration Agent

This message allows a guest to import its own guest context. This can be used with the `SNP_MSG_EXPORT_REQ` message to allow a guest to manage its migration without a migration agent.

If the imported guest supports the Secure TSC feature, the guest calling this guest message should update the guest context before importing as follows:

$$\text{PspTscOffset} = \text{PspTscOffset} - (\text{TSC} / \text{GUEST\_TSC\_FREQ}) * \text{DesiredTscFreq}$$

Where TSC is the timestamp counter read by the guest using `RDTSC`, `GUEST_TSC_FREQ` is the MSR (`C001_0134`) to retrieve the guest-effective TSC frequency, and `DesiredTscFreq` is the value stored in the guest's context page.

**Table 33. `SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_REQ` Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name                           | Description                                                |
|-------------|------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:0 | –                              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                    |
| 08h         | 31:0 | <code>IN_GCTX_SIZE</code>      | Size in bytes of the guest context stored in GCTX.         |
| 0Ch         | 31:0 | <code>IN_GCTX_VERSION</code>   | Version of the GCTX field. Set to 4h for this ABI version. |
| 10h         | 63:0 | <code>LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR</code> | The mitigation vector value. Bitmask may not set any       |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name    | Description                                                                                |
|-------------|------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |      |         | bits which are not set in the current value of SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION's MIT_VERIFIED_VECTOR |
| 18h–1Fh     |      | –       | Reserved.                                                                                  |
| 20h–39Fh    |      | IN_GCTX | Incoming guest context. See <i>Table 32</i> for the format of this field.                  |

The firmware checks that GCTX.MaReportIdValid is 0—that is, the guest sending this message has no migration agent. If this check fails, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest message was encrypted with VMPCCK0. If not, the firmware returns the status of INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that it supports the IN\_GCTX\_VERSION and that the IN\_GCTX\_SIZE is compatible with this version. If not, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_PARAM.

The firmware checks that RootMDEntry of the incoming guest context has its VALID field set to 0. If not, firmware returns INVALID\_MDATA\_ENTRY.

The firmware overwrites the guest context at GCTX\_PADDR with the guest context in the IN\_GCTX field excluding the following fields which remain unaltered or conditionally altered (where noted).

- HostData
- IDKeyDigest
- AuthorKeyDigest
- ReportId
- AuthorKeyEn
- IDBlockEn
- VcekDis
- CsVcekEn
- CsVcekPref
- State
- IDBlock
- LaunchTcb
  - **Note:** Cannot be greater than the actual LaunchTcb, but can be less.
- LaunchMitVector
  - **Note:** Can change CVEs from 1 to 0 but cannot change CVEs from 0 to 1.
- VMRK
- LD

- Policy
- ASID

The firmware responds with a message containing the status of the import. The response message is defined in *Table 34* and it is encrypted using the same key that the guest used to encrypt the request.

**Table 34. SNP\_MSG\_ABSORB\_NOMA\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name   | Description                     |
|-------------|------|--------|---------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | STATUS | Status of the absorb operation. |
| 4h-Fh       |      | –      | Reserved. Must be zero.         |

## 7.8 VMRK Message

During launch, the migration agent of the guest sends the VMRK to use for the guest. It must be encrypted with the migration agent's VMPCCK0. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

The structure of the VMRK message is defined in *Table 35*.

**Table 35. Structure of the SNP\_MSG\_VMRK\_REQ Guest Message**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name       | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------|-------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 63:12 | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of a page donated to the firmware by the hypervisor to contain the guest context. |
|             | 11:0  | –          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                 |
| 4h-1Fh      |       | –          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                 |
| 20h         | 255:0 | VMRK       | A VMRK generated by a migration agent.                                                                  |

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the GSTATE\_LAUNCH state. The firmware also checks that GCTX.IMIEn is 0. If either check fails, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_GUEST\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX.MaReportIdValid of the guest is 1 and GCTX.MaReportId of the guest matches the ReportId in GCTX\_PADDR of the migration agent; that is, the guest sending the SNP\_MSG\_VMRK\_REQ message. If not, the firmware returns the status INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware installs the VMRK into the guest's GCTX.VMRK.

The firmware responds with a message containing the status. The response message is defined in *Table 36*.

**Table 36. SNP\_MSG\_VMRK\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name   | Description                   |
|-------------|------|--------|-------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | STATUS | Status of the VMRK operation. |
| 4h-Fh       |      | –      | Reserved.                     |

## 7.9 TSC Info

When a guest creates its own VMSA, it must query the PSP for information with the TSC\_INFO message to determine the correct values to write into GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE and GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET. The guest SNP\_MSG\_TSC\_INFO\_REQ request is described in *Table 37* below.

**Table 37. SNP\_MSG\_TSC\_INFO\_REQ Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description             |
|-------------|------|------|-------------------------|
| 0h-7Fh      |      | –    | Reserved. Must be zero. |

The firmware responds with the SNP\_MSG\_TSC\_INFO\_RSP response as described in *Table 38* below.

**Table 38. SNP\_MSG\_TSC\_INFO\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | STATUS           | Status of the TSC_INFO message                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4h          | 31:0 | –                | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 8h          | 63:0 | GUEST_TSC_SCALE  | Calculated as $GCTX.DesiredTscFreq / (\text{mean native frequency})$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 10h         | 63:0 | GUEST_TSC_OFFSET | $GCTX.PspTscOffset$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 18h         | 31:0 | TSC_FACTOR       | Encoding of the percentage decrease from nominal TSC frequency to mean TSC frequency due to clocking parameters. Mean TSC frequency can be calculated by the guest as:<br><br>$GUEST\_TSC\_FREQ * (1 - (TSC\_FACTOR * 0.00001))$ For instance, a TSC_FACTOR value of 200 indicates a reduction of 0.2% from nominal TSC frequency. |
| 1Ch-7Fh     |      | –                | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

The guest should set the GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE and GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET VMSA fields to the values provided by the PSP.

## 7.10 Get CSR

This message allows the guest to retrieve a self-signed CSR to replace the FMC\_Alias certificate. The guest takes on responsibility for maintaining the resultant certificate. There are no inputs required for this message.

If the guest has been launched with the CSVCEK\_EN flag set, then the firmware will construct the CSR and return the SNP\_MSG\_GET\_CSR\_RSP message. Otherwise, the firmware will return UNSUPPORTED.

**Table 39. SNP\_MSG\_GET\_CSR\_RSP Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name        | Description                                             |
|-------------|------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | STATUS      | The status of key derivation operation.<br>0h: Success. |
| 04h         | 31:0 | REPORT_SIZE | Size in bytes of the CSR.                               |
| 08h-1Fh     | —    | —           | Reserved.                                               |
| 20h         |      | REPORT      | The CSR generated by the firmware.                      |

## 7.11 Get TPM Info

The SNP\_MSG\_GET\_TPM\_INFO\_REQ guest request returns the TPM\_INFO structure for the calling guest.

**Table 40: Layout of the SNP\_MSG\_GET\_TPM\_INFO\_REQ request message.**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name  | Description                                     |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 127:0 | NONCE | The nonce to include in the TPM_INFO structure. |

**Table 41: Layout of the SNP\_MSG\_GET\_TPM\_INFO\_RSP response message.**

| Byte Offset | Bits      | Name     | Description                      |
|-------------|-----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0      | STATUS   | The status of the guest request. |
| 04h         | 660 bytes | TPM_INFO | The TPM_INFO structure.          |
| 298h        | 63:0      | Reserved | Must be zero.                    |

If the platform does not have a TPM to report, the command returns a `TPM_INFO` structure with the `VALID` bit cleared and the following fields zeroed.

If the platform does have a TPM, the firmware constructs a `TPM_INFO` object with the following

- The `NONCE` field is set to the `NONCE` value here.
- The `GUEST` field is set.
- The `VALID` bit is set.
- The `REPORT_ID` set to the `REPORT_ID` in of the calling guest.
- The `EK_DIGEST` is set to the collected EK digest.
- The `NV_INDEX` is set to the NV index used to retrieve the EK.
- The `SIGNATURE` is the signature over the `TPM_INFO` object.
- The `SIGNING_KEY` is set to indicate the key that signed this object.

The firmware returns an `SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_RSP` response message with `STATUS` set to `SUCCESS` and the `TPM_INFO` field set to the constructed `TPM_INFO` object.

## Chapter 8 Command Reference

### 8.1 DOWNLOAD\_FIRMWARE

This command allows the hypervisor to install SNP firmware newer than the currently active firmware. This command is a legacy SEV command and documented in Section 5 of [SEV].

In addition to the checks performed in [SEV], the SNP platform state must be UNINIT. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

### 8.2 DOWNLOAD\_FIRMWARE\_EX

This command replaces the current SEV-SNP firmware application with a new SEV-SNP application. This command extends the functionality of `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE` with support for provisional updates and for updates while SNP firmware is in the INIT state.

See *Section 3.3* for further information on live updates.

**Note:** When SNP is in the UNINIT state and `COMMIT` is set to 1, this command behaves as if `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE` was called instead.

#### 8.2.1 Parameters

**Table 42. Layout of the `CMDBUF_SNP_DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name     | Description                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------|--------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH   | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                          |
| 04h         | 31:0 | —      | —        | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                          |
| 08h         | 63:0 | In     | FW_PADDR | System physical address of the region that contains an SEV-SNP firmware image. This region must be 32 B aligned. |
| 10h         | 31:0 | In     | FW_LEN   | Length of the SEV-SNP firmware in bytes.                                                                         |
| 14h         | 31:1 | —      | —        | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                          |
|             | 0    | In     | COMMIT   | Indicates that this command will automatically commit the newly installed image.                                 |

## 8.2.2 Actions

The SNP firmware may be in any state. If SEV is not in the UNINIT state, then the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the image is well formed and compatible with currently installed firmware within the PSP. This check is implementation specific and includes internal consistency checks and signature validation. If the provided image is not well formed, then the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`. If the image is compressed or encrypted, then the firmware returns `UNSUPPORTED`.

If the package length does not validate, then the firmware returns `INVALID_LENGTH`. If the signature of the image does not validate, then the firmware returns `BAD_SIGNATURE`.

If a version or SVN rollback is detected, then `INVALID_CONFIG` is returned. If `FW_PADDR` is not 32-byte aligned, then `INVALID_ADDRESS` is returned.

If the package provided is not an SEV binary, then `INVALID_PARAM` is returned. If the binary is encrypted or compressed and the platform does not support that feature for DownloadFirmware binaries, then `INVALID_CONFIG` is returned. The `COMMIT` parameter is used to have the firmware commit the provided image and set the `CommittedTCB` version to the provided image's `FirmwareVersion`. Otherwise, the `SNP_COMMIT` command may be called at a later time. This feature exists so the Hypervisor can try out the new firmware and revert back from the uncommitted version in case any issues arise.

If the `FirmwareVersion` of the provided firmware is greater than or equal to the `FirmwareVersion` of the current image, then this command is processing an upgrade. In this case, the provided image restricts the minimum version from which it will upgrade with its `MinUpgradeFrom` attribute. The firmware checks that `MinUpgradeFrom` of the provided image is less than or equal to the `FirmwareVersion` of the current firmware. If not, the firmware returns `SHUTDOWN_REQUIRED`.

When the firmware returns `SHUTDOWN_REQUIRED` status, the Host should send the `SHUTDOWN` or `SHUTDOWN_EX` commands prior to sending any other SEV commands. The firmware will continue to process commands, although commands may not execute properly. Following the subsequent `SHUTDOWN/SHUTDOWN_EX`, the Host could perform `DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE/DOWNLOAD_FIRMWARE_EX` to load an alternate firmware image.

If the `FirmwareVersion` of the provided firmware is less than the `FirmwareVersion` of the current image, then this command is processing a downgrade. The current firmware will check that the `FirmwareVersion` of the provided image is equal to the `CommittedVersion` of the current firmware. If not, the firmware returns `BAD_VERSION`.

The firmware then installs the provided image, replacing the current firmware. If the SNP firmware is in the INIT state, all SNP firmware state is retained.

If a provided image is installed but the new firmware detects it cannot proceed safely, the firmware will automatically try to revert back to the CommittedVersion. If firmware reversion is successful, the firmware will return UPDATE\_FAILED.

If firmware reversion is unsuccessful, then firmware will return HWERROR\_UNSAFE. Following a return of HWERROR\_UNSAFE, operation of the SEV firmware is indeterminate, and the recommendation is to reboot the platform.

If the firmware does not have the ability to automatically roll back to the CommittedVersion (per older Milan firmware versions), the firmware may return RESTORE\_REQUIRED. After returning RESTORE\_REQUIRED status, the firmware will only successfully execute DOWNLOAD\_FIRMWARE\_EX. Hypervisors should resolve this condition by rolling back to the CommittedVersion of the firmware by invoking DOWNLOAD\_FIRMWARE\_EX with the firmware image of the CommittedVersion. The firmware will continue to process commands, although command execution will be indeterminate and may not execute properly.

If COMMIT is 1 and the command successfully completes, the firmware implicitly commits the SVN and FirmwareVersion of the provided image as if SNP\_COMMIT was called.

Until the new image has been committed, the Hypervisor will have the ability to revert back to the CommittedVersion by invoking DOWNLOAD\_FIRMWARE\_EX again with the committed image. Note that in order to perform a firmware upgrade, the current firmware must be successfully committed.

### 8.2.3 Status Codes

**Table 43. Status Codes for DOWNLOAD\_FW\_EX**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| RESTORE_REQUIRED       | One of the following has occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>New firmware image is installed but unusable.</li> <li>Update of the firmware internal state has failed, and the firmware has not successfully reverted to the COMMITTED_VERSION. For older firmware/platforms (Milan), the firmware may return RESTORE_REQUIRED instead of HWERROR_UNSAFE.</li> </ul> |
| INVALID_PARAM          | Provided image is not well formed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| SHUTDOWN_REQUIRED      | Provided image cannot be live updated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| BAD_VERSION            | Provided image is less than CommittedVersion.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The SEV state is not UNINIT.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address is invalid for use by the firmware (not aligned).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| UNSUPPORTED            | A required feature is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Status         | Condition                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INVALID_CONFIG | The system is not in a valid configuration that can support SNP.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| BAD_SIGNATURE  | Incorrect signature provided.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| UPDATE_FAILED  | Update of the firmware internal state has failed, and the firmware has successfully reverted to the COMMITTED_VERSION.                                                                                                               |
| HWERROR_UNSAFE | Update of the firmware internal state has failed, and the firmware has not successfully reverted to the COMMITTED_VERSION. For older firmware/platforms (Milan), the firmware may return RESTORE_REQUIRED instead of HWERROR_UNSAFE. |

## 8.3 SNP\_COMMIT

This command commits the currently installed firmware. Once committed, the firmware cannot be replaced with a previous firmware version or SVN.

See *Section 3.3* for further information on live updates.

### 8.3.1 Actions

The firmware sets the CommittedTcb to the CurrentTcb of the current firmware.

The firmware sets the CommittedVersion to the FirmwareVersion of the current firmware.

The firmware sets the ReportedTcb to the CurrentTcb.

The firmware deletes the VLEK hashstick if ReportedTcb changed.

### 8.3.2 Status Codes

**Table 44. Status Codes for SNP\_COMMIT**

| Status  | Condition              |
|---------|------------------------|
| SUCCESS | Successful completion. |

## 8.4 GET\_ID

This command returns a unique ID for the system that can be used to obtain a certificate for the VCEK from AMD's Key Distribution Server [KDS-VCEK], which expects the output of this command to be provided in the HWID URL parameter. This command is a legacy SEV command and documented in Section 5 of [SEV].

In addition to the checks in [SEV], the firmware also checks that, if the SNP firmware state is INIT, the 16 B buffer pointed at by ID\_PADDR resides entirely in Firmware or Default pages. Otherwise, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

## 8.5 SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS

This command returns information about the platform's current status and capabilities.

If CSVCEK\_EN is supported, then the number of memory pages required for the certificate chain can be obtained using the PLATFORM\_STATUS. In addition, the number of pages required to store the CoRIM ID list (see *Section 8.40*) is also provided.

### 8.5.1 Parameters

**Table 45. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                             |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:0 | In     | STATUS_PADDR | sPA to write the platform status structure. See <i>Table 46 below</i> . |

### 8.5.2 Actions

The platform may be in any state when this command is called.

The firmware checks that STATUS\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

If the SNP firmware state is INIT, the page must be either a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

If the platform state is UNINIT, the firmware does not check the state or size of the page.

The following data structure is written to memory at STATUS\_PADDR.

**Table 46. Layout of the STRUCT\_PLATFORM\_STATUS Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name        | Description                                                                      |
|-------------|------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 7:0  | API_MAJOR   | Major API version.                                                               |
| 01h         | 7:0  | API_MINOR   | Minor API version.                                                               |
| 02h         | 7:0  | STATE       | The current platform state, zero extended. See <i>Section 3.2</i> for encodings. |
| 03h         | 7:4  | —           | Reserved.                                                                        |
|             | 3    | IS_TIO_INIT | Indicates TIO_INIT has succeeded and TIO has                                     |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |       |                            | been initialized in the firmware. Cleared during SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX (IOMMU=1). Present if SevTio feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                     |
|             | 2     | IOMMU_W_SAFE               | Indicates that the IOMMU Write Buffer Vulnerability is resolved. Resets to 0. Contains mitigation for CVE-2023-20585.                                                                                                                                 |
|             | 1     | ALIAS_CHECK_COMPLETE       | Indicates that alias detection has completed since the last system reset and there are no aliasing addresses. Resets to 0. Contains mitigation for CVE-2024-21944.                                                                                    |
|             | 0     | IS_RMP_INIT                | Set to the value of IsRmpInitialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 04h         | 31:0  | BUILD                      | Firmware build ID for this API version.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 08h         | 31:21 | —                          | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 20:17 | NUM_CORIM_ID_PAGES         | Number of 4 kB memory pages required for CoRIM ID list                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|             | 16:9  | NUM_CERT_PAGES_P384        | Number of 4 kB memory pages required for chip secret certificate chain.<br><b>Note:</b> the number of pages returned is based on the maximum size of a guest message response, which is limited to one 4-kB page and always includes a 4-byte STATUS. |
|             | 8     | IS_VIOMMU_EN               | Indicates VIOMMU is enabled as set by SNP_INIT_EX[VIOMMU_EN]. Cleared during SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX (x86=1). Present if VIOMMU feature bit is set.                                                                                                           |
|             | 7     | IS_TIO_EN                  | Indicates TIO is enabled as set by SNP_INIT_EX[TIO_EN]. Cleared during SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX (x86=1). Present if SevTio feature bit is set.                                                                                                                 |
|             | 6     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN  | Indicates ciphertext hiding is enabled for the DRAM.<br>Present if CipherTextHidingDRAM feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                           |
|             | 5     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_CAP | Indicates platform capable of ciphertext hiding for the DRAM.<br>Present if CipherTextHidingDRAM feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                  |
|             | 4     | RAPL_DIS                   | Indicates that the RAPL is disabled.<br>Present if RaplDis feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                                                        |
|             | 3     | FEATURE_INFO               | Indicates that the SNP_FEATURE_INFO command                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name          | Description                                             |
|-------------|------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
|             |      |               | is available.                                           |
|             | 2    | VLEK_EN       | Indicates whether a VLEK hashstick is loaded.           |
|             | 1    | MASK_CHIP_KEY | Set to the value of MaskChipKey.                        |
|             | 0    | MASK_CHIP_ID  | Set to the value of MaskChipId.                         |
| 0Ch         | 31:0 | GUEST_COUNT   | The number of guests currently managed by the firmware. |
| 10h         | 63:0 | CURRENT_TCB   | The CurrentTcb of the firmware.                         |
| 18h         | 63:0 | REPORTED_TCB  | The reported TCB version in guest attestation reports.  |

### 8.5.3 Status Codes

**Table 47. Status Codes for SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS**

| Status             | Condition                                                      |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS            | Successful completion.                                         |
| INVALID_ADDRESS    | The address is invalid for use by the firmware.                |
| INVALID_PARAM      | MBZ fields are not zero.                                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE | The page at STATUS_PADDR is not in the correct RMP page state. |

## 8.6 SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS\_EX

This command returns information about the platform's current status and capabilities.

If CSVCEK\_EN is supported, then the number of memory pages required for the certificate chain can be obtained using the PLATFORM\_STATUS. In addition, the number of pages required to store the CoRIM ID list (see *Section 8.40*) is also provided.

### 8.6.1 Parameters

**Table 48. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS\_EX Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                       |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | In     | VERSION      | Command version                                                   |
| 04h         | 31:0 | —      | —            | Reserved. Must be zero.                                           |
| 08h         | 63:0 | In     | STATUS_PADDR | sPA to write the platform status structure. See <i>Table 46</i> . |

## 8.6.2 Actions

The platform may be in any state when this command is called.

The firmware checks that STATUS\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

If the SNP firmware state is INIT, the page must be either a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

If the platform state is UNINIT, the firmware does not check the state or size of the page.

The following data structure is written to memory at STATUS\_PADDR.

**Table 49. Layout of the STRUCT\_PLATFORM\_STATUS\_EX Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 7:0  | API_MAJOR            | Major API version.                                                                                                                                                      |
| 01h         | 7:0  | API_MINOR            | Minor API version.                                                                                                                                                      |
| 02h         | 7:0  | STATE                | The current platform state, zero extended. See <i>Section 3.2</i> for encodings.                                                                                        |
| 03h         | 7:4  | —                    | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                               |
|             | 3    | IS_TIO_INIT          | Indicates TIO has been initialized in the firmware. Present if SevTio feature bit is set.                                                                               |
|             | 2    | —                    | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                               |
|             | 1    | ALIAS_CHECK_COMPLETE | Indicates that alias detection has been completed since the last system reset and there are no aliasing addresses. Resets to 0. Contains mitigation for CVE-2024-21944. |
|             | 0    | IS_RMP_INIT          | Set to the value of IsRmpInitialized.                                                                                                                                   |
| 04h         | 31:0 | BUILD                | Firmware build ID for this API version.                                                                                                                                 |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 08h         | 31:21 | —                          | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 20:17 | NUM_CORIM_ID_PAGES         | Number of 4 kB memory pages required for CoRIM ID list                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|             | 16:9  | NUM_CERT_PAGES_P384        | Number of 4 kB memory pages required for chip secret certificate chain.<br><b>Note:</b> the number of pages returned is based on the maximum size of a guest message response, which is limited to one 4-kB page and always includes a 4-byte STATUS. |
|             | 8     | IS_VIOMMU_EN               | Indicates VIOMMU is enabled. Present if VIOMMU feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|             | 7     | IS_TIO_EN                  | Indicates TIO is enabled. Present if SevTio feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|             | 6     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN  | Indicates ciphertext hiding is enabled for the DRAM.<br>Present if CipherTextHidingDRAM feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                           |
|             | 5     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_CAP | Indicates platform capable of ciphertext hiding for the DRAM.<br>Present if CipherTextHidingDRAM feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                  |
|             | 4     | RAPL_DIS                   | Indicates that the RAPL is disabled.<br>Present if RaplDis feature bit is set.                                                                                                                                                                        |
|             | 3     | FEATURE_INFO               | Indicates that the SNP_FEATURE_INFO command is available.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 2     | VLEK_EN                    | Indicates whether a VLEK hashstick is loaded.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|             | 1     | MASK_CHIP_KEY              | Set to the value of MaskChipKey.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|             | 0     | MASK_CHIP_ID               | Set to the value of MaskChipId.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | GUEST_COUNT                | The number of guests currently managed by the firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 10h         | 63:0  | CURRENT_TCB                | The CurrentTcb of the firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 18h         | 63:0  | REPORTED_TCB               | The reported TCB version in guest attestation reports.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 20h         | 255:0 | CURRENT_ETCB               | The CurrentEtcB of firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 40h         | 255:0 | REPORTED_ETCB              | The reported ETCB version in guest attestation reports.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 60h         | 511:0 | —                          | Reserved. Mbz.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

### 8.6.3 Status Codes

**Table 50. Status Codes for SNP\_PLATFORM\_STATUS\_EX**

| Status             | Condition                                                      |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS            | Successful completion.                                         |
| INVALID_ADDRESS    | The address is invalid for use by the firmware.                |
| INVALID_PARAM      | MBZ fields are not zero.                                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE | The page at STATUS_PADDR is not in the correct RMP page state. |

## 8.7 SNP\_CONFIG

This command sets the systemwide configuration values for SNP.

### 8.7.1 Parameters

**Table 51. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_CONFIG\_STATUS Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name          | Description                                                                     |
|-------------|-------|--------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:0  | In     | REPORTED_TCB  | The TCB_VERSION to report in guest attestation reports.                         |
| 08h         | 31:2  | —      | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |
|             | 1     | In     | MASK_CHIP_KEY | Indicates that the VCEK is not used in attestation and guest key derivation.    |
|             | 0     | In     | MASK_CHIP_ID  | Indicates that the CHIP_ID field in the attestation report will always be zero. |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | —      | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |
| 10h         | 128:0 | —      | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |
| 20h-3Fh     | 255:0 | In     | REPORTED_ETCB | The ETCB_VERSION to report in guest attestation reports.                        |

### 8.7.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the REPORTED\_TCB parameter is less than or equal to CommittedTcb. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

The firmware checks that the REPORTED\_ETCB parameter is less than or equal to CommittedEtcB. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

If REPORTED\_TCB is 0, the firmware sets ReportedTcb to CommittedTcb. Otherwise, the firmware sets ReportedTcb value to REPORTED\_TCB. If the ReportedTcb changes, the firmware deletes the VLEK hashstick.

If `REPORTED_ETCB` is 0, the firmware sets `ReportedEtcB` to `CommittedEtcB`. Otherwise, the firmware sets `ReportedEtcB` value to `REPORTED_ETCB`.

The firmware sets the systemwide `MaskChipId` to `MASK_CHIP_ID`.

The firmware sets `MaskChipKey` to `MASK_CHIP_KEY`. This bit was introduced in version 1.53.

### 8.7.3 Status Codes

**Table 52. Status Codes for `SNP_CONFIG_STATUS`**

| Status        | Condition                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS       | Successful completion.                                                                                                           |
| INVALID_PARAM | The desired reported <code>TCB_VERSION</code> or <code>ETCB_VERSION</code> are invalid, or <code>MBZ</code> fields are not zero. |

## 8.8 SNP\_INIT

This command validates the platform configuration of the SNP and initializes the firmware. This command is a specialization of the `SNP_INIT_EX` command.

**Deprecated in version 1.52:** In version 1.52 and later, `SNP_INIT_EX` should be used instead of `SNP_INIT`. It is important to ensure that UEFI reserved pages are marked HV-fixed to ensure the stability of the system.

### 8.8.1 Parameters

None.

### 8.8.2 Actions

This command behaves as if `SNP_INIT_EX` was called with `INIT_RMP` set to 1 and all other parameters set to zero.

### 8.8.3 Status Codes

See `SNP_INIT_EX` below.

## 8.9 SNP\_INIT\_EX

This command validates the platform configuration of the SNP and initializes the firmware. Hypervisors should not schedule any guests during the execution of this command.

During the execution of this command, the firmware configures and enables SNP security policy enforcement in many system components. Some system components write to regions of memory

reserved by early x86 firmware (e.g., UEFI). Other system components write to regions provided by the operation system, hypervisor, or x86 firmware. Such system components can write only to HV-fixed or Default pages. An error will result when they attempt to write to other page states after SNP\_INIT enables their SNP enforcement.

Starting in version 1.52, this command takes a list of sPA ranges to convert into HV-fixed page states during the RMP initialization. If INIT\_RMP is 1, a hypervisor should provide all sPA ranges that it will never assign to a guest until the next RMP reinitialization. For instance, the memory that UEFI reserves should be included in the range list. This allows system components that occasionally write to memory (e.g., logging to UEFI-reserved regions) to not fail due to RMP initialization and SNP enablement.

Some processors support the Running Average Power Limit (RAPL) feature which provides information about power utilization of software. RAPL can be disabled using the RAPL\_DIS flag in SNP\_INIT\_EX to disable RAPL while SNP firmware is in the INIT state. Guests may require that RAPL is disabled by using the POLICY.RAPL\_DIS guest policy flag. RAPL disable is supported when RaplDis (bit 2) in Fn8000\_0024\_ECX\_x00 is 1.

Ciphertext hiding for DRAM prevents host accesses from reading the ciphertext of SNP guest private memory. Instead of reading ciphertext, the host will see constant default values. Ciphertext hiding separates the ASID space into SNP guest ASIDs and host ASIDs. All SNP active guests must have an ASID less than or equal to MAX\_SNP\_ASID provided to the SNP\_INIT\_EX command. All SEV-legacy guests must be greater than MAX\_SNP\_ASID. If MAX\_SNP\_ASID is 0 then firmware treats it as meaning that all ASIDs between 1 and MIN\_SEV\_ASID -1 are allocated for SEV-SNP. This feature is present when CipherTextHidingDRAM (bit 3) in Fn8000\_0024\_ECX\_x00 is 1.

A platform is capable of ciphertext hiding if DDR-BF (bounded fault) mode is configured. If not, the SNP\_INIT\_EX command will fail if ciphertext hiding is requested.

SNP\_INIT\_EX will fail if RmpInstallPending or RstInstallPending are set.

Hypervisors must not assign the VM\_HSAVE pages as HV-fixed. Otherwise, VMRUN will fail.

## 8.9.1 Parameters

**Table 53. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_INIT\_EX Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|------|--------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:6 | —      | —                         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                 |
|             | 5    | In     | VIOMMU_EN                 | 0: Do not enable vIOMMU support.<br>1: Enable vIOMMU support.                                                                                           |
|             | 4    | In     | TIO_EN                    | 0: Do not enable TIO support.<br>1: Enable TIO support.                                                                                                 |
|             | 3    | In     | CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN | 0: Ciphertext hiding for the DRAM is disabled.<br>1: Ciphertext hiding for the DRAM is enabled.<br><br>Present when CipertextHiding feature bit is set. |
|             | 2    | In     | RAPL_DIS                  | 0: RAPL enabled.<br>1: RAPL disabled.<br>Present when RaplDis feature bit is set.                                                                       |
|             | 1    | In     | LIST_PADDR_EN             | 0: LIST_PADDR is not valid.<br>1: LIST_PADDR is valid.                                                                                                  |
|             | 0    | In     | INIT_RMP                  | Indicates that the RMP should be initialized.                                                                                                           |
| 04h         | 31:0 | —      | —                         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                 |
| 08h         | 63:0 | In     | LIST_PADDR                | sPA of the RANGE_LIST structure. See <i>Table 113</i> for SNP_PAGE_SET_STATE.                                                                           |
| 10h         | 15:0 | In     | MAX_SNP_ASID              | The maximum ASID usable for a SNP guest. Valid only when CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN is 1 or SevEsnpConcurrent is 1.                                      |
| 12h–3Fh     | -    | -      | -                         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                 |

## 8.9.2 Actions

Before invoking SNP\_INIT\_EX with INIT\_RMP set to 1, software must ensure that no CPUs contain dirty cache lines for the memory containing the RMP.

The firmware checks that the platform is in the UNINIT state. The firmware also checks that SEV-legacy firmware is not already initialized. If either check fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks for CXL devices in the system. If there are Type 1 or Type 2 CXL devices present in the system, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

If `INIT_RMP` is 0, then the firmware determines if SNP can be initialized securely without initializing the RMP table. The firmware requires initialization if the RMP is not yet initialized. The firmware may also require initialization for other reasons, such as if the RMP was incompatibly initialized by a previous version of the firmware. If the firmware determines the RMP requires initialization, the firmware returns `RMP_INIT_REQUIRED`.

If `INIT_RMP` is 1, then the firmware ensures the following system requirements are met:

- `SYS_CFG[MemoryEncryptionModEn]` must be set to 1 across all cores. (SEV must be enabled.)
- `SYS_CFG[SecureNestedPagingEn]` must be set to 1 across all cores.
- `SYS_CFG[VMPLEn]` must be set to 1 across all cores.
- `SYS_CFG[MFDm]` must be set to 1 across all cores.
- `VM_HSAVE_PA` (MSR C001\_0117) must be set to 0h across all cores.
- `HWCER[SmmLock]` (MSR C001\_0015) must be set to 1 across all cores.

The following MSRs must be set identically across all cores:

- All MTRRs
- `IORR_BASE`
- `IORR_MASK`
- `TOM`
- `TOM2`

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

If `INIT_RMP` is 1, then the firmware also ensures that the following requirements for the RMP have been met:

- `RMP_BASE` and `RMP_END` must be set identically across all cores.
- `RMP_BASE` must be 1 MB aligned.
- `RMP_END - RMP_BASE + 1` must be a multiple of 1 MB.
- RMP is large enough to protect itself.

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware initializes the IOMMU to perform RMP enforcement. The firmware also transitions the event log, PPR log, and completion wait buffers of the IOMMU to an RMP page state that is read only to the hypervisor and cannot be assigned to guests.

If `LIST_PADDR_EN` is 1, then the firmware performs the following checks:

- If `INIT_RMP` is 0, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.
- If `LIST_PADDR` is an invalid sPA, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

- If a range in RANGES contains an invalid address, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. For this check, a range overlapping the RMP is not considered an invalid address.

If `RAPL_DIS` is 1 but the power management controller does not support RAPL disable, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`. Otherwise, if `RAPL_DIS` is 1, the firmware disables the RAPL feature for the entire system. RAPL (Running Average Power Limit) is an x86 feature where runtime measurements of power usage (memory or CPUs) can be found in designated MSRs.

If `CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN` is 1, the firmware checks that the platform is capable of ciphertext hiding. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

If `CIPHERTEXT_HIDING_DRAM_EN` is 1, the firmware checks for CXL memory in the system. If there is CXL memory present in the system, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

Otherwise, the firmware enables Ciphertext hiding and sets the maximum SNP ASID to be `MAX_SNP_ASID`.

The firmware checks that the platform can run SEV-ES and SEV-SNP guests at the same time (bit 17 of `Fn8000_0024_ECX_x00` is present). If it is, the firmware sets the maximum SNP ASID to be `MAX_SNP_ASID`. If `MAX_SNP_ASID` is 0 then firmware treats it as meaning that all ASIDs between 1 and `MIN_SEV_ASID - 1` are allocated for SEV-SNP.

If `INIT_RMP` is 1, then the firmware alters the RMP such that pages of the RMP are in the Firmware state and all other pages covered by the RMP are in the Hypervisor state. If `LIST_PADDR_EN` is 1, then the firmware initializes the provided ranges in `LIST_PADDR` as HV-fixed pages. The firmware also initializes any microarchitectural data structures within the RMP. Immediately after completing RMP initialization, the firmware forces a TLB flush across all cores on all sockets.

The firmware sets `MaskChipKey` to 0.

The firmware marks all encryption-capable ASIDs as unusable for encrypted virtualization.

The firmware sets the platform state to `INIT`.

### 8.9.3 Status Codes

**Table 54. Status Codes for `SNP_INIT_EX`**

| Status                              | Condition                                                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SUCCESS</code>                | Successful completion.                                                 |
| <code>INVALID_CONFIG</code>         | The system is not in a valid configuration that can support SNP.       |
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | The platform is not in the <code>UNINIT</code> state.                  |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>        | <code>RMP_BASE</code> or <code>RMP_END</code> are not valid addresses. |

|                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RMP_INIT_REQUIRED            | Initialization of the RMP is required.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| EXPAND_BUFFER_LENGTH_REQUEST | Indicates that a firmware write buffer is not large enough. Indicates that the firmware is asking to increase the data buffer size. The new buffer size is specified in the BUFFER_CAPACITY field of BUFFER structure. |

## 8.10 SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE

This command donates a page from the hypervisor to the firmware to be used to store the guest context.

### 8.10.1 Parameters

**Table 55. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of a page donated to the firmware by the hypervisor to contain the guest context. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                 |

### 8.10.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the donated context page is in the Firmware state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`. The firmware checks that the donated page is marked as a 4 KB page in the RMP. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`.

The firmware transitions the page to the Context state and initializes the guest context according to *Table 56 below*. All other fields within the guest context remain indeterminate until they are initialized through the launch process or through the import process.

**Table 56. Guest Context Initialized by the SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE Command**

| Field | Value                                                                   |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASID  | Set to 0h, indicating that no ASID has been associated with this guest. |
| State | <code>GSTATE_INIT</code> .                                              |
| VEK   | Generated using a CSRNG.                                                |

| Field             | Value                   |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| OeklvCount        | 0h.                     |
| LaunchTcb         | Set to CommittedTcbS    |
| LaunchMitVector   | Set to CurrentMitVector |
| LastAccessVersion | Set to CurrentVersion.  |

### 8.10.3 Status Codes

**Table 57. Status Codes for SNP\_GCTX\_CREATE**

| Status                 | Condition                                       |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.          |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address is invalid for use by the firmware. |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | The page is not in the Firmware state.          |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | The page is not a 4 KB page.                    |

## 8.11 SNP\_ACTIVATE

This command installs the guest's VEK into the memory controller in the key slot associated with a given ASID.

### 8.11.1 Parameters

**Table 58. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_ACTIVATE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of a page donated to the firmware by the hypervisor to contain the guest context. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                 |
| 08h         | 31:0  | In     | ASID       | ASID to bind to the guest.                                                                              |

### 8.11.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that the page at GCTX\_PADDR is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the GSTATE\_LAUNCH state or in the GSTATE\_RUNNING state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST\_STATE.

The firmware checks that ASID is an encryption-capable ASID. If not, then the firmware returns INVALID\_ASID.

The firmware checks the ASID to be within the range 1h to (MIN\_SEV\_ASID-1), inclusive. The MIN\_SEV\_ASID value is discovered by CPUID Fn8000\_001F[EDX]. Further, if ciphertext hiding is enabled or concurrent SEV-ES and SEV-SNP guests are allowed (bit 17 of Fn8000\_0024\_ECX\_x00 is present), the firmware checks that the ASID is within the range 1h to MAX\_SNP\_ASID, inclusive. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ASID. If MAX\_SNP\_ASID is 0 then firmware treats it as meaning that all ASIDs between 1 and MIN\_SEV\_ASID -1 are allocated for SEV-SNP. If the ASID is already assigned to another guest, the firmware returns ASID\_OWNED. If the guest is already activated, the firmware returns ACTIVE.

The firmware checks that a DF\_FLUSH is not required. If a DF\_FLUSH is required, the firmware returns DF\_FLUSH\_REQUIRED.

**Note:** All ASIDs are marked to require a DF\_FLUSH at reset.

The firmware checks that no pages are assigned to the ASID in the RMP. If pages are assigned, the firmware returns INVALID\_CONFIG.

If POLICY.SINGLE\_SOCKET is 1 and the system has more than one socket populated, the firmware returns POLICY\_FAILURE. The firmware installs the guest's VEK into the memory controllers in the key slot associated with the given ASID.

### 8.11.3 Status Codes

**Table 59. Status Codes for SNP\_ACTIVATE**

| Status                 | Condition                                            |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                               |
| INVALID_CONFIG         | ASID has pages assigned to it already.               |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.               |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the LAUNCH state.                |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address is invalid for use by the firmware.      |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                             |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                |
| INVALID_ASID           | The provided ASID is not an encryption-capable ASID. |

| Status            | Condition                                                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASID_OWNED        | The ASID is already owned by another guest.                               |
| POLICY_FAILURE    | The guest policy prevents activation on multiple sockets.                 |
| UPDATE_FAILED     | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| ACTIVE            | The guest is already activated.                                           |
| DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED | DF_FLUSH was not invoked before this command.                             |

## 8.12 SNP\_ACTIVATE\_EX

This command installs the guest's VEK into the memory controller in the key slot associated with a given ASID on select core complexes. Only hardware threads in the selected core complex may execute the guest. When an ASID is later reused, WBINVD needs be done only on core complexes associated with the guest.

### 8.12.1 Parameters

**Table 60. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_ACTIVATE\_EX Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0  | In     | EX_LEN     | Length of command buffer. 20h for this version.                                                         |
| 04h         | 31:0  | —      | —          | Reserved.                                                                                               |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of a page donated to the firmware by the hypervisor to contain the guest context. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                 |
| 10h         | 31:0  | In     | ASID       | The ASID in which the guest should be bound.                                                            |
| 14h         | 31:0  | In     | NUMIDs     | Number of APIC IDs in the ID_PADDR list.                                                                |
| 18h         | 63:0  | In     | ID_PADDR   | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of a list of 32-bit APIC IDs.                                                      |

### 8.12.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that the page at GCTX\_PADDR is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` state or in the `GSTATE_RUNNING` state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that ASID is an encryption-capable ASID. Further, if ciphertext hiding is supported or concurrent SEV-ES and SEV-SNP guests are allowed (bit 17 of `Fn8000_0024_ECX_x00` is present), the firmware checks that the ASID is within the range 1h to `MAX_SNP_ASID`, inclusive. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ASID`. If `MAX_SNP_ASID` is 0 then firmware treats it as meaning that all ASIDs between 1 and `MIN_SEV_ASID` -1 are allocated for SEV-SNP. If the ASID is already assigned to another guest, the firmware returns `ASID_OWNED`. If the guest is already activated but on a different ASID, the firmware returns `ACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that a `DF_FLUSH` is not required. If one is needed, the firmware returns `DFLUSH_REQUIRED`.

**Note:** All ASIDs are marked to require a `DF_FLUSH` at reset.

If the guest is not yet activated, the firmware checks that no pages are assigned to the ASID in the RMP. If pages are already assigned, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

If `POLICY.SINGLE_SOCKET` is 1, the firmware performs the following checks:

- If the guest is bound to a migration agent, the migration agent must already be activated. Also, completing `SNP_ACTIVATE_EX` must not result in activating the guest on a different socket than its migration agent.
- Completing `SNP_ACTIVATE_EX` will not result in activating the guest on multiple sockets.

If any of the checks fail, the firmware returns `POLICY_FAILURE`. Otherwise, the firmware installs the guest's VEK into the memory controllers for the given APIC IDs into the key slot associated with the given ASID. This command can be called multiple times to expand the set of CCXs on which the guest may execute.

### 8.12.3 Status Codes

**Table 61. Status Codes for `SNP_ACTIVATE_EX`**

| Status                              | Condition                                            |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>INVALID_CONFIG</code>         | ASID has pages assigned to it already.               |
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | The platform is not in the INIT state.               |
| <code>INVALID_GUEST_STATE</code>    | The guest is not in the LAUNCH state.                |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>        | The address is invalid for use by the firmware.      |
| <code>INVALID_PARAM</code>          | MBZ fields are not zero.                             |
| <code>INVALID_GUEST</code>          | The guest is invalid.                                |
| <code>INVALID_ASID</code>           | The provided ASID is not an encryption-capable ASID. |

|                   |                                                                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASID_OWNED        | The ASID is already owned by another guest.                               |
| POLICY_FAILURE    | The guest policy prevents activation on multiple sockets.                 |
| UPDATE_FAILED     | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| ACTIVE            | The guest is already activated.                                           |
| DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED | DF_FLUSH was not invoked before this command.                             |
| SUCCESS           | Successful completion.                                                    |

## 8.13 SNP\_DECOMMISSION

This command destroys a guest context. After this command successfully completes, the guest will not long be runnable.

### 8.13.1 Parameters

**Table 62. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_DECOMMISSION Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                        |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest's context page. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                            |

### 8.13.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the page is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that all metadata pages have been reclaimed. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware marks the ASID of the guest as not runnable. Then the firmware records that each CPU core on each of the CCXs that the guest was activated on requires a `WBINVD` followed by a single `DF_FLUSH` command to ensure that all unencrypted data in the caches are invalidated before reusing the ASID. The firmware then transitions the page into a Firmware page.

### 8.13.3 Status Codes

**Table 63. Status Codes for SNP\_DECOMMISSION**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address is not valid or is misaligned.                                |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is not valid.                                                   |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.14 SNP\_DF\_FLUSH

This command flushes SoC data buffers after CPU caches have been invalidated. After a VM is decommissioned or exported, the hypervisor must execute a WBINVD on the cores that the previous guest was active on before invoking the SNP\_DF\_FLUSH command. The combination of WBINVD and SNP\_DF\_FLUSH ensures that all data associated with the previous guests are no longer in any CPU caches.

### 8.14.1 Parameters

None.

### 8.14.2 Actions

For each core marked for cache invalidation, the firmware checks that the core has executed a WBINVD instruction. If not, the firmware returns WBINVD\_REQUIRED. The commands that mark cores for cache invalidation include SNP\_DECOMMISSION and the guest request SNP\_MSG\_EXPORT\_REQ.

The firmware flushes the write buffers of the data fabric and records that a flush has been performed for all decommissioned ASIDs.

### 8.14.3 Status Codes

**Table 64. Status Codes for SNP\_DF\_FLUSH**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                              |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The firmware is not in the INIT state.                                              |
| WBINVD_REQUIRED        | At least one core did not execute a WBINVD instruction before calling this command. |

## 8.15 SNP\_SHUTDOWN

This command returns the firmware to an uninitialized state.

### 8.15.1 Parameters

None.

### 8.15.2 Actions

This command is equivalent to executing SNP\_SHUTDOWN\_EX with a command buffer containing zeroes.

### 8.15.3 Status Codes

**Table 65. Status Codes for SNP\_SHUTDOWN**

| Status            | Condition                                     |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED | DF_FLUSH was not invoked before this command. |
| SUCCESS           | Successful completion.                        |

## 8.16 SNP\_SHUTDOWN\_EX

This command returns the firmware to an uninitialized state and optionally disables the SNP enforcement in the IOMMU and sets the associated pages to the Hypervisor state.

### 8.16.1 Parameters

**Table 66. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_SHUTDOWN\_EX Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name               | Description                                                                                                         |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH             | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                             |
| 4h          | 31:2 | —      | —                  | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                             |
|             | 1    | In     | X86_SNP_SHUTDOWN   | Disables SNP on all cores by clearing the SYS_CFG[SNPEn] bit.<br><br>Present when X86SnpsShutdown feature bit is 1. |
|             | 0    | In     | IOMMU_SNP_SHUTDOWN | Disable enforcement of SNP in the IOMMU.                                                                            |

## 8.16.2 Actions

If SEV firmware is not in the UNINIT state, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

If `IOMMU_SNP_SHUTDOWN` is set to 1, the firmware performs the following actions:

- Disables SNP enforcement by the IOMMU.
- Transitions all pages associated with the IOMMU to the Reclaim state. Firmware before version 1.53 transitions to the Hypervisor state. Starting with version 1.53, the hypervisor must execute `RMPUPDATE` to recover the page by transitioning it from Reclaim.
- Records that a full RMP reinitialization is required by the next `SNP_INIT` invocation.

If `IOMMU_SNP_SHUTDOWN` is 0, the firmware leaves the IOMMU and its pages unaltered.

If `X86_SNP_SHUTDOWN` is set to 1, the firmware clears the `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` bit in each core. Software must set `IOMMU_SNP_SHUTDOWN` to 1 if `X86_SNP_SHUTDOWN` is 1.

The firmware reenables the RAPL feature if it was disabled in `SNP_INIT_EX`.

If the SNP firmware is in the INIT state, the firmware checks every encryption-capable ASID to verify that it is not in use by a guest, and a `DF_FLUSH` is not required. If there is an active SNP guest, the firmware returns `ACTIVE`. If a `DF_FLUSH` is required, the firmware returns `DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED`.

The firmware clears the encryption keys from the memory controller and transitions the platform to the UNINIT state and returns `SUCCESS`.

**Note:** *Aside from the IOMMU pages referenced above, the firmware will not automatically reclaim any pages marked as immutable in the RMP. The hypervisor should either reclaim the pages using `SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM` or should call `SNP_INIT` afterward to reset the RMP.*

## 8.16.3 Status Codes

**Table 67. Status Codes for `SNP_SHUTDOWN_EX`**

| Status                              | Condition                                                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | SEV is not in the UNINIT state.                            |
| <code>DF_FLUSH_REQUIRED</code>      | <code>DF_FLUSH</code> was not invoked before this command. |
| <code>ACTIVE</code>                 | An SNP guest is active.                                    |
| <code>SUCCESS</code>                | Successful completion.                                     |

## 8.17 SNP\_LAUNCH\_START

This command initializes the flow to launch a guest. The command will be modified with a new flag to select the DICE derived VCEK for the target guest.

### 8.17.1 Parameters

**Table 68. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_LAUNCH\_START Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR       | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|             | 11:0  | –      | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 08h         | 63:0  | In     | POLICY           | Guest policy. See <i>Table 11</i> for a description of the guest policy structure.                                                                                                                                                |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | MA_GCTX_PADDR    | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context of the migration agent. Ignored if MA_EN is 0.                                                                                                                                         |
|             | 11:0  | In     | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 18h         | 31:4  | –      | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|             | 3     | In     | CSVCEK_EN        | 0: Legacy VCEK used for guest<br>1: Chip secret VCEK enabled for guest                                                                                                                                                            |
|             | 2     | In     | CSVCEK_PREF      | 0: Legacy VCEK preferred for guest report signing<br>1: Chip secret VCEK preferred for guest report signing<br>CSVCEK_EN must be set to 1 for this option to be selected.                                                         |
|             | 1     | –      | MI_EN            | Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|             | 0     | In     | MA_EN            | 1 if this guest is associated with a migration agent. Otherwise, 0.                                                                                                                                                               |
| 1Ch         | 31:0  | In     | DESIRED_TSC_FREQ | Hypervisor-desired means TSC frequency in kHz of the guest. This field has no effect if guests do not enable Secure TSC in the VMSA. The hypervisor should set this field to 0h if it does not support Secure TSC for this guest. |
| 20h         | 127:0 | In     | GOSVV            | Hypervisor-provided value to indicate guest OS-visible workarounds. The format is hypervisor defined.                                                                                                                             |

## 8.17.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If `MA_EN` is 1, the firmware checks that `MA_GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If `MA_EN` is 1, the firmware checks that `MA_GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_INIT` state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

If the caller attempts to launch the command with a non-zero unsupported `IMI_EN` parameter, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

If the platform does not support migration agents and `MA_EN` is set, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

`FEATURE_INFO` must indicate chip secret VCEK is supported on the platform (see *Section 8.38*) if `CSVCEK_EN` is set to '1', else firmware will return `INVALID_PARAM`. If `CSVCEK_EN` is set to '0' and `CSVCEK_PREF` is set to '1', then firmware will return `INVALID_PARAM`.

SNP firmware will select the appropriate VCEK derivation based on the value of `CSVCEK_EN` and `CSVCEK_PREF` on platforms that enable chip secret VCEK derivation as follows:

- `MSG_KEY_REQ` will make use of the chip secret VCEK if `CSVCEK_EN`=1. Otherwise, `MSG_KEY_REQ` will use the legacy VCEK.

The guest context will also reflect this selection with the entries `CsVcekEn` and `CsVcekPref`.

The firmware verifies that the guest's policy is satisfied by checking that the following conditions are met:

- If `MA_EN` is 1, `POLICY.MIGRATE_MA` must be 1.
- If `MA_EN` is 1, then the migration agent must not be migratable—that is, the migration agent itself must not be bound to another migration agent.
- If `POLICY.SMT` is 0, then SMT must be disabled.
- `POLICY.ABI_MAJOR` must equal the major version of this ABI.
- `POLICY.ABI_MINOR` must be less than or equal to the minor version of this ABI.
- If `POLICY.SINGLE_SOCKET` is 1 and `MA_EN` is 1, then the migration agent's `POLICY.SINGLE_SOCKET` must be 1.
- If `POLICY.CXL_ALLOW` is 0, then CXL channels must not have memory or devices populated. This policy check is performed when `CxlAllowPolicy` feature bit is set.

- If POLICY.MEM\_AES\_256\_XTS is 1, then the memory controller must be configured to use AES-256 XTS. This policy check is performed when Aes256XtsPolicy feature bit is set.
- If POLICY.RAPL\_DIS is 1, then the Running Average Power Limit (RAPL) feature must be disabled. This policy check is performed when RaplDis feature bit is set.
- If POLICY.CIPHERTEXT\_HIDING\_DRAM is 1, then ciphertext hiding must be enabled. This policy check is performed when CiphertextHidingDRAM feature bit is set.
- If POLICY.PAGE\_SWAP\_DISABLE is 1, then page swap disable feature must be enabled. This policy check is performed when SnpPageSwapDisablePolicy feature bit is set.

If any of the above conditions are not met, the firmware returns POLICY\_FAILURE.

The firmware initializes the guest context with the values defined in *Table 69*.

**Table 69. Guest Context Field Initialization for the Launch Flow**

| Field                                            | Value                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MsgCount0<br>MsgCount1<br>MsgCount2<br>MsgCount3 | 0h                                                                                                                             |
| Policy                                           | Set to POLICY.                                                                                                                 |
| MaReportId                                       | Set to ReportId of MA if MA_EN is 1. Set to PADDR_INVALID otherwise.                                                           |
| MaReportIdValid                                  | Set to the value of MA_EN.                                                                                                     |
| OEK                                              | Generated using a CSRNG.                                                                                                       |
| VMPCK0<br>VMPCK1<br>VMPCK2<br>VMPCK3             | Generated using a CSRNG.                                                                                                       |
| VMRK                                             | Generated using a CSRNG. May be replaced by a VMRK guest message from the associated migration agent. See <i>Section 7.8</i> . |
| LD                                               | 0h                                                                                                                             |
| IMD                                              | Unsupported. Set to 0h.                                                                                                        |
| IDBlockEn                                        | 0                                                                                                                              |
| IDBlock                                          | 0h                                                                                                                             |
| IDKeyDigest                                      | 0h                                                                                                                             |
| AuthorKeyEn                                      | 0                                                                                                                              |
| AuthorKeyDigest                                  | 0h                                                                                                                             |
| ReportID                                         | Generated using a CSRNG.                                                                                                       |
| IMIEn                                            | Unsupported. Must be zero.                                                                                                     |
| GOSVW                                            | GOSVW field.                                                                                                                   |

| Field          | Value                    |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| DesiredTscFreq | Set to DESIRED_TSC_FREQ. |
| PspTscOffset   | 0h                       |

The firmware sets the guest state to GSTATE\_LAUNCH.

### 8.17.3 Status Codes

**Table 70. Status Codes for SNP\_LAUNCH\_START**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address was not a valid sPA or properly aligned.                       |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest was not in the GSTATE_INIT state.                               |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest's policy was violated.                                          |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.18 SNP\_LAUNCH\_UPDATE

This command inserts pages into the guest physical address space.

### 8.18.1 Parameters

**Table 71. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_LAUNCH\_UPDATE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                            |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                       |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                |
| 08h         | 31:5  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                |
|             | 4     | —      | IMI_PAGE   | Must be zero.                                                          |
|             | 3:1   | In     | PAGE_TYPE  | Encoded page type. See <i>Table 72</i> .                               |
|             | 0     | In     | PAGE_SIZE  | Indicates page size. 0 indicates a 4 KB page. 1 indicates a 2 MB page. |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | PAGE_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the destination page.                         |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name        | Description                                                                         |
|-------------|-------|--------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |       |        |             | The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE.                                           |
|             | 11:0  | –      | –           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                             |
| 18h         | 63:32 | –      | –           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                             |
|             | 31:24 | In     | VMPL3_PERMS | VMPL permission mask for VMPL3. See <i>Table 73</i> for the definition of the mask. |
|             | 23:16 | In     | VMPL2_PERMS | VMPL permission mask for VMPL2. See <i>Table 73</i> for the definition of the mask. |
|             | 15:8  | In     | VMPL1_PERMS | VMPL permission mask for VMPL1. See <i>Table 73</i> for the definition of the mask. |
|             | 7:0   | –      | –           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                             |

**Table 72. Encodings for the PAGE\_TYPE Field**

| Value               | Name                 | Description                                                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h                 | –                    | Reserved.                                                   |
| 01h                 | PAGE_TYPE_NORMAL     | A normal data page.                                         |
| 02h                 | PAGE_TYPE_VMSA       | A VMSA page.                                                |
| 03h                 | PAGE_TYPE_ZERO       | A page full of zeroes.                                      |
| 04h                 | PAGE_TYPE_UNMEASURED | A page that is encrypted but not measured.                  |
| 05h                 | PAGE_TYPE_SECRETS    | A page for the firmware to store secrets for the guest.     |
| 06h                 | PAGE_TYPE_CPUID      | A page for the hypervisor to provide CPUID function values. |
| All other encodings |                      | Reserved.                                                   |

**Table 73. VMPL Permission Mask**

| Bit | Field                   | Description                                             |
|-----|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 7:5 | –                       | Reserved. Must be zero.                                 |
| 4   | Supervisor-Shadow-Stack | Guest supervisor shadow stack page access is allowed.   |
| 3   | Execute-Supervisor      | Page is executable by the VMPL in CPL2, CPL1, and CPL0. |
| 2   | Execute-User            | Page is executable by the VMPL in CPL3.                 |
| 1   | Write                   | Page is writeable by the VMPL.                          |
| 0   | Read                    | Page is readable by the VMPL.                           |

## 8.18.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` and `PAGE_PADDR` are valid sPAs. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware checks that if `PAGE_SIZE` is 1, then `PAGE_PADDR` is 2 MB aligned. If this check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware also checks that the page at `PAGE_PADDR` is Pre-Guest page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the guest is activated, that is, it has an assigned ASID. If not, the firmware returns `INACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that the ASID of the destination page indicated by the RMP matches the ASID of the guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware checks that the destination page size indicated by the RMP matches the page size indicated by the `PAGE_SIZE` parameter. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`.

The firmware checks that `IMI_PAGE` is 0. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`. The firmware unconditionally sets `GCTX.IMIEn` to zero.

The following VMPL permissions settings combinations are prohibited and will result in firmware returning `INVALID_PARAM`:

- Bit 0 is set to 0, but any other mask permission bit is set to 1. Non-readable pages are not supported.
- Bit 4 is set to 1, and either Bit 2 or Bit 3 are set to 1. Executable supervisor shadow stack pages are not supported.
- Bit 3 set to 1, and Bit 2 set to 0. Supervisor execute but not user-execute pages are not supported.

The firmware updates the `GCTX.LD` with information describing the contents and location of the pages inserted into the guest. Each update to the digest is of the following form:

`DIGEST_NEW := SHA-384(PAGE_INFO)`

where `PAGE_INFO` is the structure defined in *Table 74*.

**Table 74. Layout of the PAGE\_INFO Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Field       | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 383:0 | DIGEST_CUR  | The value of the current digest (either LD or IMD).                                               |
| 30h         | 383:0 | CONTENTS    | The SHA-384 digest of the measured contents of the region, if any. See the following subsections. |
| 60h         | 15:0  | LENGTH      | Length of this structure in bytes.                                                                |
| 62h         | 7:0   | PAGE_TYPE   | The zero-extended PAGE_TYPE field provided by the hypervisor.                                     |
| 63h         | 7:1   | –           | 0h                                                                                                |
|             | 0     | IMI_PAGE    | Unsupported. Must be zero.                                                                        |
| 64h         | 31:24 | VMPL3_PERMS | The VMPL3_PERMS field provided by the hypervisor.                                                 |
|             | 23:16 | VMPL2_PERMS | The VMPL2_PERMS field provided by the hypervisor.                                                 |
|             | 15:8  | VMPL1_PERMS | The VMPL1_PERMS field provided by the hypervisor.                                                 |
|             | 7:0   | –           | 0h                                                                                                |
| 68h         | 63:0  | GPA         | The 64-bit gPA of the region.                                                                     |

The firmware unconditionally updates GCTX.LD.

The following subsections describe how the PAGE\_TYPE, GPA, and CONTENTS fields are determined.

**Note:** The guest physical address space is limited according to *CPUID Fn80000008\_EAX* and thus the GPAs used by the firmware in measurement calculation are equally limited. Hypervisors should not attempt to map pages outside of this limit.

The following subsections describe the actions the firmware takes on the guest address space depending on the page type, PAGE\_TYPE. If the page size is 2 MB, then the firmware will update the launch digest as if the data were provided in a contiguous sequence of 4 KB pages. The final launch digest is therefore independent of how the hypervisor chooses to size the pages within the nested page tables and in the RMP.

#### 8.18.2.1 PAGE\_TYPE\_NORMAL

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_NORMAL.

For each 4 KB chunk within the page, the firmware constructs a PAGE\_INFO structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** PAGE\_TYPE\_NORMAL

- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB chunk. The firmware calculates this by adding the offset of the chunk to RMP.GPA of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** The SHA-384 digest of the contents of the 4 KB chunk.

The firmware updates GCTX.LD as described above.

The firmware encrypts the page with the VEK in place. The firmware then sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the destination page to Guest-Valid.

### 8.18.2.2 PAGE\_TYPE\_VMSA

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_VMSA.

The firmware checks that the destination page is 4 KB. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_SIZE.

The firmware constructs a PAGE\_INFO structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** PAGE\_TYPE\_VMSA
- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB page. The firmware uses the RMP.GPA of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** The SHA-384 digest of the contents of the 4 KB page. The firmware ignores the values of GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE and GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET and measures the VMSA as if those fields contained zero.

The firmware updates GCTX.LD as described above.

If VmsaRegProt in the SEV\_FEATURES field of VMSA is 1 and the current microcode level supports VmsaRegProt, then the firmware generates an 8 B random tweak value and writes it to offset 300h of the VMSA. The firmware then XORs the tweaked quadwords of the VMSA with the tweak value. The quadwords of the VMSA that are tweaked are determined by the family, model, stepping, and microcode patch of the processor. This information is shared with the guest via the PAGE\_TYPE\_SECRETS page. If the current microcode level does not support VmsaRegProt, the firmware returns UNSUPPORTED.

**Note:** The firmware measures the VMSA provided by the hypervisor prior to any tweak operations.

If SecureTsc in the SEV\_FEATURES field of VMSA is 1, the firmware sets the GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE and GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET fields in the VMSA as follows:

GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE := GCTX.DesiredTscFreq / (mean native frequency)  
GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET := 0

**Note:** These VMSA fields are changed after the measurement is calculated.

If SecureTsc in the SEV\_FEATURES field of VMSA is 0, then the firmware does not alter GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE or GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET.

The firmware encrypts the page with the VEK in place and sets the RMP.VMSA of the page to 1. Then it sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the page to Guest-Valid.

#### 8.18.2.3 PAGE\_TYPE\_ZERO

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_ZERO.

For each 4 KB chunk within the page, the firmware constructs a PAGE\_INFO structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** PAGE\_TYPE\_ZERO
- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB chunk. The firmware calculates this by adding the offset of the chunk to RMP.GPA of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** 0h

The firmware updates GCTX.LD as described above.

The firmware encrypts a page of zeroes with the VEK. The firmware sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the page to Guest-Valid.

#### 8.18.2.4 PAGE\_TYPE\_UNMEASURED

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_UNMEASURED.

For each 4 KB chunk within the page, the firmware constructs a PAGE\_INFO structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** PAGE\_TYPE\_UNMEASURED
- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB chunk. The firmware calculates this by adding the offset of the chunk to RMP.GPA of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** 0h

The firmware updates GCTX.LD as described above.

The firmware encrypts the page with the VEK in place and then sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the page to Guest-Valid.

#### 8.18.2.5 PAGE\_TYPE\_SECRETS

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_SECRETS.

The firmware checks that the destination page is 4 KB. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`.

The firmware constructs a `PAGE_INFO` structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** `PAGE_TYPE_SECRETS`
- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB page. The firmware uses the `RMP.GPA` of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** 0h

The firmware updates `GCTX.LD` as described above.

The firmware constructs the 4 KB data structure described in *Table 75*. Reserved fields are set to 0h. The firmware then encrypts the data structure with the guest's VEK and writes it into the page. The firmware ensures that the data structure content remains confidential to the guest and the firmware.

**Table 75. Secrets Page Format**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 000h        | 31:0  | VERSION           | Version of the secrets page format. The version described in this specification is 5h.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 004h        | 31:1  | –                 | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|             | 0     | IMI_EN            | Unsupported. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 008h        | 31:0  | FMS               | Family, model, and stepping information as reported in <code>CPUID Fn0000_0001_EAX</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | –                 | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 10h         | 127:0 | GOSVW             | GOSVW guest context field as provided by the hypervisor in <code>SNP_LAUNCH_START</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 020h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK0           | Set to <code>GCTX.VMPCCK0</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 040h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK1           | Set to <code>GCTX.VMPCCK1</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 060h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK2           | Set to <code>GCTX.VMPCCK2</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 080h        | 255:0 | VMPCCK3           | Set to <code>GCTX.VMPCCK3</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 0A0h–0FFh   |       | –                 | Reserved for guest OS usage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 100h–13Fh   |       | VMSA_TWEAK_BITMAP | Set to the bitmap of the VMSA tweak. The <i>k</i> th bit of the bitmap indicates that the <i>k</i> th quadword of the VMSA is tweaked.                                                                                                                                           |
| 140h–15Fh   |       | –                 | Reserved for guest OS usage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 160h        | 31:0  | TSC_FACTOR        | Encoding of the percentage decrease in mean TSC frequency due to clocking parameters. Real TSC frequency can be calculated by the guest as:<br>$\text{GUEST\_TSC\_FREQ} * (1 - (\text{TSC\_FACTOR} * 0.00001))$ For instance, a <code>TSC_FACTOR</code> value of 200 indicates a |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name                | Description                                                 |
|-------------|-------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |       |                     | reduction of 0.2% of TSC frequency.                         |
| 164h        | 31:0  | –                   | Reserved.                                                   |
| 168h        | 63:0  | LAUNCH_MIT_VECTOR   | Set to the launch mitigation vector value (LaunchMitVector) |
| 170h        | 63:0  | LAUNCH_TCB_VERSION  | Set to launch TCB Version (LaunchTcb)                       |
| 178h        | 63:0  | –                   | Reserved.                                                   |
| 180h        | 255:0 | LAUNCH_ETCB_VERSION | Set to launch Extended TCB Version (LaunchEtcB)             |
| 1A0h–FFFh   |       | –                   | Reserved.                                                   |

The firmware sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the page to Guest-Valid.

#### 8.18.2.6 PAGE\_TYPE\_CPUID

The firmware performs the actions in this subsection when PAGE\_TYPE is PAGE\_TYPE\_CPUID.

The firmware checks that the destination page is 4 KB. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_SIZE.

The hypervisor should fill the page with CPUID function structures as described in *Table 76 below*. These structures inform the guest of the machine configuration exposed to the guest by the hypervisor. However, a malicious hypervisor could provide a value that puts the guest in an insecure state. Therefore, the firmware checks each CPUID function structure to determine if the provided value is secure.

If firmware encounters a CPUID function that is not in the standard range (Fn0000\_0000 through Fn0000\_FFFF) or the extended range (Fn8000\_0000 through Fn8000\_FFFF), the firmware does not perform any checks on the function output.

If firmware encounters a CPUID function that is in the standard or extended ranges, then the firmware performs a check to ensure that the provided output would not lead to an insecure guest state. If insecure function output is identified, the firmware updates the field with an acceptable value.

**Note:** Some functions have multiple acceptable values, and the firmware may choose any one of them. The firmware then returns INVALID\_PARAM. In this failure case, the page is not encrypted with the VEK, the page measurement is not updated, and the page state remains unaltered.

The policy used by the firmware to assess CPUID function output can be found in [PPR].

The firmware constructs a PAGE\_INFO structure with the following data:

- **PAGE\_TYPE:** PAGE\_TYPE\_CPUID

- **GPA:** The gPA of the 4 KB page. The firmware uses the RMP.GPA of the page.
- **CONTENTS:** 0h

The firmware updates GCTX.LD as described above.

The page has enough for COUNT\_MAX function structures but only COUNT function structures are valid. COUNT\_MAX is 64.

The firmware then encrypts the page with the VEK in place.

**Table 76. CPUID Page Format**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name             | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | COUNT            | Number of CPUID functions to validate. Must be less than or equal to COUNT_MAX.                                                             |
| 04h         | 31:0 | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                     |
| 08h         | 63:0 | –                | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                     |
| 10h–C0Fh    |      | CPUID_FUNCTION[] | COUNT_MAX number of CPUID_FUNCTION records. (See <i>Section 7.1</i> for the format of this record.) Only the first COUNT records are valid. |

The firmware sets the VMPL permissions for the page and transitions the page to Guest-Valid.

### 8.18.3 Status Codes

**Table 77. Status Codes for SNP\_LAUNCH\_UPDATE**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid or incorrectly aligned.                             |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the GSTATE_LAUNCH state.                              |
| INACTIVE               | The guest has not been activated.                                         |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was not in the correct state.                                      |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | The destination page was not owned by the guest.                          |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | The destination page was not the correct size.                            |
| INVALID_PARAM          | IMI_PAGE was incorrectly set.                                             |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

| Status      | Condition                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| UNSUPPORTED | A required feature is not supported. |

## 8.19 SNP\_LAUNCH\_FINISH

This command completes the guest launch flow.

### 8.19.1 Parameters

**Table 78. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_LAUNCH\_FINISH Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name           | Description                                                                                                              |
|-------------|-------|--------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                                                         |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                  |
| 08h         | 63:0  | In     | ID_BLOCK_PADDR | sPA of the ID block.<br>Ignored if ID_BLOCK_EN is 0.                                                                     |
| 10h         | 63:0  | In     | ID_AUTH_PADDR  | sPA of the authentication information of the ID block.<br>Ignored if ID_BLOCK_EN is 0.                                   |
| 18h         | 63:3  | —      | —              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                  |
|             | 2     | In     | VCEK_DIS       | Indicates that the VCEK is disabled for this guest.                                                                      |
|             | 1     | In     | AUTH_KEY_EN    | Indicates that the author key is present in the ID authentication information structure.<br>Ignored if ID_BLOCK_EN is 0. |
|             | 0     | In     | ID_BLOCK_EN    | Indicates that the ID block and the ID authentication information structure are present.                                 |
| 20h         | 255:0 | In     | HOST_DATA      | Opaque host-supplied data to describe the guest. The firmware does not interpret this value.                             |

**Table 79. Structure of the ID Block**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name      | Description                                                                            |
|-------------|-------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 383:0 | LD        | The expected launch digest of the guest.                                               |
| 30h         | 127:0 | FAMILY_ID | Family ID of the guest, provided by the guest owner and uninterpreted by the firmware. |
| 40h         | 127:0 | IMAGE_ID  | Image ID of the guest, provided by the guest owner and uninterpreted by the firmware.  |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name      | Description                                                             |
|-------------|------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 50h         | 31:0 | VERSION   | Version of the ID block format. Must be 1h for this version of the ABI. |
| 54h         | 31:0 | GUEST_SVN | SVN of the guest.                                                       |
| 58h         | 63:0 | POLICY    | The policy of the guest.                                                |

**Table 80. Layout of the ID Authentication Information Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name          | Description                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | ID_KEY_ALGO   | The algorithm of the ID Key. See <i>Appendix B</i> for details.                                                                   |
| 4h          | 31:0 | AUTH_KEY_ALGO | The algorithm of the Author Key. See <i>Appendix B</i> for details.                                                               |
| 8h–3Fh      |      | –             | Reserved. Should be zero.                                                                                                         |
| 40h–23Fh    |      | ID_BLOCK_SIG  | The signature of all bytes of the ID block. See <i>Appendix B</i> for the format of the signature.                                |
| 240h–643h   |      | ID_KEY        | The public component of the ID key. See <i>Appendix B</i> for the format of the public key.                                       |
| 644h–67Fh   |      | –             | Reserved. Should be zero.                                                                                                         |
| 680h–87Fh   |      | ID_KEY_SIG    | The signature of the ID_KEY. See <i>Appendix B</i> for the format of the signature.                                               |
| 880h–C83h   |      | AUTHOR_KEY    | The public component of the Author key. See <i>Appendix B</i> for the format of the public key.<br>Ignored if AUTHOR_KEY_EN is 0. |
| C84h–FFFh   |      | –             | Reserved. Should be zero.                                                                                                         |

### 8.19.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` state. The firmware also checks that `GCTX.IMIEn` is 0. If either check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the guest is activated, that is, it has an assigned ASID. If not, the firmware returns `INACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that, if `ID_BLOCK_EN` is 1, then `ID_BLOCK_PADDR` and `ID_AUTH_PADDR` are valid sPAs. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

If `ID_BLOCK_EN` is 1, the firmware checks that the `LD` field of the ID block is equal to `GCTX.LD`. If not, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`. The firmware then checks that the `POLICY` field of the ID block is equal to `GCTX.Policy`. If not, the firmware returns `POLICY_FAILURE`. The firmware then validates the signature of the ID block using the ID public key. If `AUTH_KEY_EN` is also 1, the firmware validates the signature of the ID key using the Author public key. If either signature fails to validate, the firmware returns `BAD_SIGNATURE`.

The firmware then initializes the guest context fields according to *Table 81*.

**Table 81. Guest Context Fields Initialized During `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH`**

| Field           | Value                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HostData        | <code>HOST_DATA</code> .                                                                                  |
| IDBlockEn       | <code>ID_BLOCK_EN</code> .                                                                                |
| IDBlock         | If <code>ID_BLOCK_EN</code> is 1, then set to the ID block. 0 otherwise.                                  |
| IDKeyDigest     | If <code>ID_BLOCK_EN</code> is 1, then set to the SHA-384 digest of the ID public key. 0 otherwise.       |
| AuthorKeyEn     | <code>AUTHOR_KEY_EN</code> .                                                                              |
| AuthorKeyDigest | If <code>AUTHOR_KEY_EN</code> is 1, then set to the SHA-384 digest of the Author public key. 0 otherwise. |
| VcekDis         | <code>VCEK_DIS</code> .                                                                                   |

The firmware makes the guest runnable on the ASID on which it is activated. The firmware then sets the guest state to `GSTATE_RUNNING`.

### 8.19.3 Status Codes

**Table 82. Status Codes for `SNP_LAUNCH_FINISH`**

| Status                              | Condition                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SUCCESS</code>                | Successful completion.                                                                        |
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | The platform is not in the <code>INIT</code> state.                                           |
| <code>INVALID_GUEST_STATE</code>    | The guest is not in the <code>GSTATE_LAUNCH</code> state or <code>GCTX.IMIEn</code> is not 0. |
| <code>INVALID_GUEST</code>          | The guest is invalid.                                                                         |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>        | An address is invalid or incorrectly aligned.                                                 |
| <code>INVALID_PARAM</code>          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                                      |
| <code>INVALID_PAGE_STATE</code>     | A page was not in the correct state.                                                          |
| <code>INACTIVE</code>               | The guest has not been activated.                                                             |

| Status        | Condition                                                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BAD_SIGNATURE | Incorrect signature provided.                                            |
| UPDATE_FAILED | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed |

## 8.20 SNP\_GUEST\_STATUS

This command is used to retrieve information about an SNP guest. The returned GUEST\_STATUS will be modified to include whether the chip secret VCEK has been selected for the target guest.

### 8.20.1 Parameters

**Table 83. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_GUEST\_STATUS Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                                     |
|-------------|-------|--------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR   | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —            | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |
| 08h         | 63:0  | In     | STATUS_PADDR | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of the guest status structure. See <i>Table 84 below</i> . |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —            | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                         |

### 8.20.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that the GCTX\_PADDR and STATUS\_PADDR are valid sPAs. If either check fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that the guest context page is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST. The firmware checks that the guest status page is a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

The firmware writes the following structure to the beginning of the guest status page.

**Table 84. Layout of the STRUCT\_SNP\_GUEST\_STATUS Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name   | Description                                   |
|-------------|------|--------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:0 | POLICY | Guest policy.                                 |
| 08h         | 31:0 | ASID   | Current ASID. If none is assigned, set to 0h. |
| 0Ch         | 7:0  | STATE  | Current guest state.                          |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name        | Description                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0Dh         | 7:0  | —           | Reserved.                                                                                                        |
| 0Eh         | 15:0 | —           | Reserved.                                                                                                        |
| 10h         | 31:3 | —           | Reserved.                                                                                                        |
|             | 2    | CSVEK_EN    | 0: Legacy VCEK used by guest.<br>1: Chip secret VCEK used by guest.                                              |
|             | 1    | CSVCEK_PREF | 0: Legacy VCEK preferred for guest report signing<br>1: Chip secret VCEK preferred for guest report signing      |
|             | 0    | VCEK_DIS    | Value of VcekDis for this guest. Indicates that the guest cannot use the VCEK for attestation or key derivation. |
| 14h         | 31:0 | —           | Reserved.                                                                                                        |
| 18h         | 63:0 | —           | Reserved.                                                                                                        |

### 8.20.3 Status Codes

**Table 85. Status Codes for SNP\_GUEST\_STATUS**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address is invalid for use by the firmware.                           |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest context page was invalid.                                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | The guest status page was not in the correct state.                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | The guest status page was not the correct size.                           |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.21 SNP\_PAGE\_MOVE

This command moves the contents of SNP-protected pages within the system physical address space without violating SNP security.

### 8.21.1 Parameters

**Table 86. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PAGE\_MOVE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                      |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page. |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name      | Description                                                                              |
|-------------|-------|--------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | 11:0  | —      | —         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                  |
| 08h         | 31:1  | —      | —         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                  |
|             | 0     | In     | PAGE_SIZE | Indicates page size. 0 indicates a 4 KB page. 1 indicates a 2 MB page.                   |
| 0Ch         | 31:0  | —      | —         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                  |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the source page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE.      |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                  |
| 18h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the destination page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —         | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                  |

### 8.21.2 Actions

If SnpPageSwapDisablePolicy feature bit is set, the firmware checks the Guest policy bit PAGE\_SWAP\_DISABLE (bit 25). If this bit is set (enabled) then the firmware returns POLICY\_FAILURE.

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that the page at GCTX\_PADDR is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the GSTATE\_LAUNCH or GSTATE\_RUNNING states. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST\_STATE. The firmware then checks that the guest is activated. If not, the firmware returns INACTIVE.

The firmware checks that SRC\_PADDR and DST\_PADDR are valid sPAs. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that the source and destination page sizes indicated by the RMP match the page size indicated by the PAGE\_SIZE parameter. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_SIZE.

This command operates either on guest pages or on Metadata pages. The following subsections describe each case.

### 8.21.2.1 Guest Pages

The firmware performs the actions in this section when the source page is a Pre-Swap or Pre-Guest page.

The firmware checks that the destination page is a Pre-Guest page. If the check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `RMP.ASID` of both the source and destination pages are equal to the `ASID` of the guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware uses the guest's VEK to copy the plaintext of the source page into the plaintext of the destination page.

The firmware sets the `RMP.GPA` and `RMP.VMSA` of the destination page to match the `RMP.GPA` and `RMP.VMSA` of the source page. If VMPLs are enabled, the firmware also sets the VMPL permissions bits of the destination page to match the VMPL permission bits of the source page.

If the source page is a Pre-Guest page, the firmware transitions the destination page into a Guest-Invalid page. If the source page is a Pre-Swap page, the firmware transitions the destination page into a Guest-Valid page. Finally, the firmware transitions the source page into a Guest-Invalid page.

### 8.21.2.2 Metadata Pages

The firmware performs the actions in this section when the source page is a Metadata page.

The firmware checks that the destination page is a Firmware page. If the check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `RMP.GPA` of the source page is equal to the `sPA` of the guest context. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware copies the contents of the source page into the destination page. The firmware then sets the `RMP.GPA` of the destination to match the `sPA` of the guest context page and transitions the destination page into a Metadata page.

Finally, the firmware transitions the source page into a Firmware page.

### 8.21.3 Status Codes

**Table 87. Status Codes for `SNP_PAGE_MOVE`**

| Status  | Condition              |
|---------|------------------------|
| SUCCESS | Successful completion. |

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned.           |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                                    |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not activated.                                               |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | A page was not owned by the guest.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | A page was not the correct size.                                          |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest policy prevents this command from operation.                    |

## 8.22 SNP\_PAGE\_MD\_INIT

This command constructs a new Metadata page that can be used to store metadata entries.

### 8.22.1 Parameters

**Table 88. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PAGE\_MD\_INIT Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                     |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                         |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | PAGE_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the page to turn into a metadata page. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                         |

### 8.22.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that the page at `GCTX_PADDR` is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` or `GSTATE_RUNNING` states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `PAGE_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that the page pointed at by `PAGE_PADDR` is a Firmware page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware zeroes the page and then transitions it into a Metadata page, setting its `RMP.GPA` to `GCTX_PADDR`.

### 8.22.3 Status Codes

**Table 89. Status Codes for `SNP_PAGE_MD_INIT`**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned.           |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                                    |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                                        |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.23 `SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT`

This command swaps an SNP-protected page out so that the hypervisor can relieve memory pressure or migrate the guest.

### 8.23.1 Parameters

**Table 90. Layout of the `CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_SWAP_OUT` Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the Guest Context page.                                                  |
|             | 11:0  | In     | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                           |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the source page. The page size is determined by <code>PAGE_SIZE</code> . |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                           |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the destination                                                          |

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name          | Description                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|------|--------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             |      |        |               | page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE.                                                                                     |
|             | 11:0 | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
| 18h         | 63:0 | In     | MDATA_PADDR   | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of a metadata entry. See <i>Section 2.1</i> for the format of a metadata entry. Ignored if ROOT_MDATA_EN is 1. |
| 20h         | 63:0 | In     | SOFTWARE_DATA | Software available data supplied by the hypervisor.                                                                                 |
| 28h         | 63:5 | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
|             | 4    | In     | ROOT_MDATA_EN | Indicates that the metadata entry will be stored in the guest context and not in MDATA_PADDR.                                       |
|             | 3    | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
|             | 2:1  | In     | PAGE_TYPE     | Deprecated page type of the source page. The FW will ignore this.                                                                   |
|             | 0    | In     | PAGE_SIZE     | Indicates page size. 0 indicates a 4 KB page. 1 indicates a 2 MB page.                                                              |

### 8.23.2 Actions

If SnpPageSwapDisablePolicy feature bit is set, the firmware checks the Guest policy bit PAGE\_SWAP\_DISABLE (bit 25). If this bit is set (enabled) then the firmware returns POLICY\_FAILURE.

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that the page at GCTX\_PADDR is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the GSTATE\_LAUNCH or GSTATE\_RUNNING states. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST\_STATE. The firmware then checks that the guest is activated. If not, the firmware returns INACTIVE.

The firmware checks that SRC\_PADDR and DST\_PADDR are valid sPAs. If ROOT\_MDATA\_EN is 0, the firmware also checks that MDATA\_PADDR is a valid sPA, is aligned to the size of an MDATA structure (64 B), and does not overlap the source or destination pages. If any of these checks fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that the source page size indicated by the RMP matches the page size indicated by the PAGE\_SIZE parameter. If the destination page is not a Default page, the firmware checks that the destination page size also matches the PAGE\_SIZE parameter. If either check fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_SIZE.

If ROOT\_MDATA\_EN is 0, then the firmware checks that the page containing MDATA\_PADDR is a Metadata page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE. Then the firmware checks that the RMP.GPA of the page containing MDATA\_ENTRY matches GCTX\_PADDR. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_OWNER.

This command operates on data pages, metadata pages, or VMSA pages.

### 8.23.2.1 Data Pages

The actions in this section are performed only when RMP.VMSA is 0 and it is not a Metadata page.

The firmware checks that the source page is a Pre-Swap or Pre-Guest page. The firmware then checks that the destination page is a Firmware or Default page. If either check fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

The firmware checks that the RMP.ASID of the source page matches the ASID of the guest. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_OWNER.

The firmware uses the guest's VEK to decrypt the contents of the source page, and it also uses the guest's OEK to wrap the contents with Aead\_Wrap() (0) without AAD. The firmware checks that incrementing the OekIvCount would not cause an overflow. If overflow would occur, the firmware returns AEAD\_OFLOW. Otherwise, the firmware increments the OekIvCount and uses that new value as the IV. The firmware then writes the produced ciphertext into the destination page.

The firmware then constructs a MDATA structure as described in *Table 91 below*. If ROOT\_MDATA\_EN is 0, the firmware writes the MDATA entry at MDATA\_PADDR. If ROOT\_MDATA\_EN is 1, the firmware writes the MDATA entry into GCTX.RootMDEntry.

**Table 91. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Data Pages**

| MDATA Field   | Value                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|
| SOFTWARE_DATA | SOFTWARE_DATA.                               |
| IV            | Constructed from OekIvCount.                 |
| AUTH_TAG      | Authentication tag generated by Aead_Wrap(). |
| PAGE_SIZE     | RMP.Page_Size of the source page.            |
| VALID         | 1                                            |
| METADATA      | 0                                            |

| MDATA Field    | Value                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMSA           | 0                                                                |
| GPA            | gPA of the source page.                                          |
| PAGE_VALIDATED | RMP.Validated of the source page.                                |
| VMPL0          | RMP.VMPL0 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL1          | RMP.VMPL1 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL2          | RMP.VMPL2 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL3          | RMP.VMPL3 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |

The firmware then transitions the source page into a Pre-Guest page state.

### 8.23.2.2 Metadata Page

The firmware checks that the source page is a Metadata page. The firmware then checks that the destination page is a Firmware or Default page. If either check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `RMP.GPA` of the source page matches `GCTX_PADDR`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware uses the guest's OEK to wrap the contents of the source page with `Aead_Wrap()` without AAD. The firmware checks that incrementing the `OekIvCount` would not cause an overflow. If overflow would occur, the firmware returns `AEAD_OFLOW`. Otherwise, the firmware increments the `OekIvCount` and uses that new value as the IV. The firmware then writes the produced ciphertext into the destination page.

The firmware then constructs a MDATA structure as described in *Table 92 below*. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 0h, the firmware writes the MDATA entry at `MDATA_PADDR`. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 1h, the firmware writes the MDATA entry into `GCTX.RootMDEntry`.

**Table 92. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Metadata Pages**

| MDATA Field   | Value                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| SOFTWARE_DATA | SOFTWARE_DATA.                                             |
| IV            | Constructed from <code>OekIvCount</code> .                 |
| AUTH_TAG      | Authentication tag generated by <code>Aead_Wrap()</code> . |
| PAGE_SIZE     | <code>RMP.Page_Size</code> of the source page.             |
| VALID         | 1                                                          |
| METADATA      | 1                                                          |
| VMSA          | 0                                                          |
| GPA           | <code>PADDR_INVALID</code> .                               |

| MDATA Field    | Value |
|----------------|-------|
| PAGE_VALIDATED | 0     |
| VMPL0          | 0h    |
| VMPL1          | 0h    |
| VMPL2          | 0h    |
| VMPL3          | 0h    |

The firmware then transitions the source page into a Firmware page state.

### 8.23.2.3 VMSA Pages

The actions in this section are performed only when RMP.VMSA is 1.

The firmware checks that the source page is a Pre-Swap or Pre-Guest page. The firmware then checks that the destination page is a Firmware or Default page. If either check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the RMP.ASID of the source page matches the ASID of the guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware uses the guest's OEK to wrap the contents of the source page with `Aead_Wrap()` without AAD. The firmware checks that incrementing the `OekIvCount` would not cause an overflow. If overflow occurs, the firmware returns `AEAD_OFLOW`. Otherwise, the firmware increments the `OekIvCount` and uses that new value as the IV. The firmware then writes the produced ciphertext into the destination page.

The firmware then constructs a MDATA structure as described in *Table 93 below*. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 0, the firmware writes the MDATA entry at `MDATA_PADDR`. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 1, the firmware writes the MDATA entry into `GCTX.RootMDEntry`.

**Table 93. Metadata Entry (MDATA) for Data Pages**

| MDATA Field   | Value                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| SOFTWARE_DATA | SOFTWARE_DATA.                                             |
| IV            | Constructed from <code>OekIvCount</code> .                 |
| AUTH_TAG      | Authentication tag generated by <code>Aead_Wrap()</code> . |
| PAGE_SIZE     | RMP.Page_Size of the source page.                          |
| VALID         | 1                                                          |
| METADATA      | 0                                                          |
| VMSA          | 1                                                          |
| GPA           | gPA of the source page.                                    |

| MDATA Field    | Value                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PAGE_VALIDATED | RMP.Validated of the source page.                                |
| VMPL0          | RMP.VMPL0 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL1          | RMP.VMPL1 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL2          | RMP.VMPL2 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |
| VMPL3          | RMP.VMPL3 of the source page if VMPLs are enabled. 0h otherwise. |

The firmware then transitions the source page into a Pre-Guest page state.

### 8.23.3 Status Codes

**Table 94. Status Codes for SNP\_PAGE\_SWAP\_OUT**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned.           |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                                    |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not activated.                                               |
| INVALID_MDATA_ENTRY    | The metadata entry is not correct.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | A page was not owned by the guest.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | A page was not the correct size.                                          |
| AEAD_OFLOW             | An overflow in the IV counter was detected.                               |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest policy prevents this command from operation.                    |

## 8.24 SNP\_PAGE\_SWAP\_IN

This command swaps an SNP-protected page back in.

## 8.24.1 Parameters

**Table 95. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PAGE\_SWAP\_IN Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name          | Description                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|-------|--------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR    | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                                                                    |
|             | 11:0  | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the source page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE.                                                 |
|             | 11:0  | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the destination page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE.                                            |
|             | 11:0  | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
| 18h         | 63:0  | In     | MDATA_PADDR   | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of a metadata entry. See <i>Section 2.1</i> for the format of a metadata entry. Ignored if ROOT_MDATA_EN is 1. |
| 20h         | 63:0  | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
| 28h         | 63:5  | –      | –             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                             |
|             | 4     | In     | ROOT_MDATA_EN | Indicates that the metadata entry will be retrieved in the guest context and not in MDATA_PADDR.                                    |
|             | 3     | In     | SWAP_IN_PLACE | If set, then SRC_PADDR and DST_PADDR are equal, and the page will be swapped in place.                                              |
|             | 2:1   | In     | PAGE_TYPE     | Deprecated page type of the source page. The FW will ignore this.                                                                   |
|             | 0     | In     | PAGE_SIZE     | Indicates page size. 0 indicates a 4 KB page. 1 indicates a 2 MB page.                                                              |

## 8.24.2 Actions

If SnpPageSwapDisablePolicy feature bit is set, the firmware checks the Guest policy bit PAGE\_SWAP\_DISABLE (bit 25). If this bit is set (enabled) then the firmware returns POLICY\_FAILURE.

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that the page at GCTX\_PADDR is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` or `GSTATE_RUNNING` states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`. The firmware then checks that the guest is activated. If not, the firmware returns `INACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that `SRC_PADDR` and `DST_PADDR` are valid sPAs. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 0, the firmware also checks that `MDATA_PADDR` is a valid sPA, is aligned to the size of an `MDATA` structure (64 B), and does not overlap the source and destination pages. If any of these checks fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is 0, then the firmware checks that the page containing `MDATA_PADDR` is a Metadata page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`. Then the firmware checks that the `RMP.GPA` of the page containing `MDATA_ENTRY` matches `GCTX_PADDR`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The metadata entry used for this command is selected according to `ROOT_MDATA_EN`. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is set, the firmware uses the metadata entry in `GCTX.RootMDEntry`. If `ROOT_MDATA_EN` is clear, the firmware uses the metadata entry at `MDATA_PADDR`.

The firmware checks that the destination page size indicated by the `RMP` matches the page size indicated by the `PAGE_SIZE` parameter. If the source page is not a Default page, the firmware checks that the destination page size also matches the `PAGE_SIZE` parameter. The firmware then checks that the `PAGE_SIZE` field of the metadata entry matches the `PAGE_SIZE` parameter. If any of these checks fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`.

The metadata entry determines the source page type according to *Table 96 below*.

**Table 96. Determining the Page Type Based on the Metadata Entry**

| Page Type                    | METADATA | VMSA |
|------------------------------|----------|------|
| <code>PAGE_TYPE_DATA</code>  | 0        | 0    |
| <code>PAGE_TYPE_MDATA</code> | 1        | 0    |
| <code>PAGE_TYPE_VMSA</code>  | 0        | 1    |

The firmware then checks that the `VALID` bit in the metadata entry is set. If the check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_MDATA_ENTRY`.

This command operates on data pages, metadata pages, or VMSA pages. The firmware performs the actions in one of the following subsections depending on the determined page type.

#### 8.24.2.1 Data Pages

The actions in this section are performed only when the page type is `PAGE_TYPE_DATA`.

If `SWAP_IN_PLACE` is 0, the firmware checks that the destination page is a Pre-Guest page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

If `SWAP_IN_PLACE` is 1, the firmware checks that the `SRC_PADDR` equals `DST_PADDR`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that the page is in the Pre-Guest state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `RMP.ASID` of the destination page matches the `ASID` of the guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware uses the `IV` field in the metadata entry and the guest's `OEK` to unwrap the contents of the source page with `Aead_Unwrap()` with no `AAD`. The firmware checks that the produced authentication tag is equal to `AUTH_TAG` in the metadata entry. If not, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`.

The firmware clears the `VALID` flag in the metadata entry.

The firmware writes the plaintext produced by `Aead_Unwrap()` into the destination page and updates the `RMP` of the destination page as follows:

- Sets the `RMP.GPA` to `GPA` in the metadata entry.
- Sets the `RMP.VMSA` to 0.
- If `VMPLs` are enabled, sets the `VMPL` permission masks in the `RMP` entry to the `VMPL` permission masks in the metadata entry.

If `PAGE_VALIDATED` in the metadata entry is 1, the firmware transitions the destination page into a Pre-Swap page.

#### 8.24.2.2 Metadata Pages

The actions in this section are performed only when the page type is `PAGE_TYPE_MDATA`.

The firmware checks that `SWAP_IN_PLACE` is 0. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

The firmware checks that the destination page is a Firmware page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware uses the `IV` field in the metadata entry and the guest's `OEK` to unwrap the contents of the source page with `Aead_Unwrap()` with no `AAD`. The firmware checks that the produced authentication tag is equal to `AUTH_TAG` in the metadata entry. If not, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`.

The firmware clears the `VALID` flag in the metadata entry.

The firmware writes the plain text produced by `Aead_Unwrap()` into the destination page.

The firmware then transitions the destination page into a Metadata page by setting the `RMP.GPA` of the destination page to the `GCTX_PADDR` of the guest.

### 8.24.2.3 VMSA Pages

The actions in this section are performed only when the page type is `PAGE_TYPE_VMSA`.

The firmware checks that `SWAP_IN_PLACE` is 0. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

The firmware checks that `PAGE_SIZE` indicates a 4 KB page size. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`.

The firmware checks that the destination page is a Pre-Guest page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `RMP.ASID` of the destination page matches the `ASID` of the guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

The firmware uses the `IV` field in the metadata entry and the guest's `OEK` to unwrap the contents of the source page with `Aead_Unwrap()` with no `AAD`. The firmware checks that the produced authentication tag is equal to `AUTH_TAG` in the metadata entry. If not, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`.

The firmware clears the `VALID` flag in the metadata entry.

The firmware writes the plaintext produced by `Aead_Unwrap()` into the destination page and updates the `RMP` of the destination page as follows:

- Sets the `RMP.GPA` to `GPA` field in the metadata entry.
- Sets the `RMP.VMSA` to 1.
- If `VMPLs` are enabled, sets the `VMPL` permission masks in the `RMP` entry to the `VMPL` permission masks in the metadata entry.

If bit 9 of `SEV_FEATURES` of the `VMSA` is 1, the firmware sets the `GUEST_TSC_SCALE` and `GUEST_TSC_OFFSET` fields of the `VMSA` as follows:

`GUEST_TSC_SCALE` := `GCTX.DesiredTscFreq` / (mean native frequency)  
`GUEST_TSC_OFFSET` := `GCTX.PspTscOffset`

If `PAGE_VALIDATED` in the metadata entry is 1h, the firmware transitions the destination page into a Pre-Swap page.

### 8.24.3 Status Codes

**Table 97. Status Codes for `SNP_PAGE_SWAP_IN`**

| Status  | Condition              |
|---------|------------------------|
| SUCCESS | Successful completion. |

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned.           |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                                    |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not activated.                                               |
| INVALID_MDATA_ENTRY    | The metadata entry is not correct.                                        |
| BAD_MEASUREMENT        | The page does not match the metadata entry's authentication tag.          |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | A page was not owned by the guest.                                        |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | A page was not the correct size.                                          |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest policy prevents this command from operation.                    |

## 8.25 SNP\_PAGE\_RECLAIM

This command reclaims Metadata, Firmware, Pre-Guest, and Pre-Swap pages.

### 8.25.1 Parameters

**Table 98. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PAGE\_RECLAIM Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                   |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | PAGE_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPAs of the page. The page size is determined by PAGE_SIZE. |
|             | 11:1  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                       |
|             | 0     | In     | PAGE_SIZE  | Indicates page size. 0 indicates a 4 KB page. 1 indicates a 2 MB page.        |

### 8.25.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that PAGE\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that `RMP.Immutable` equals 1. If not, the firmware returns `SUCCESS` without taking any further actions. The firmware then checks that the page is either a Metadata, Firmware, Pre-Guest, or Pre-Swap page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `PAGE_SIZE` equals the `RMP.PageSize` of the page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_SIZE`. If the page size is 2 MB, the firmware then checks that `PAGE_PADDR` is 2 MB aligned. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware transitions the provided page according to *Table 99 below*.

**Table 99. State Transitions Triggered by the `SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM` Command**

| Original State | New State      |
|----------------|----------------|
| Metadata       | Reclaim.       |
| Firmware       | Reclaim.       |
| Pre-Guest      | Guest-Invalid. |
| Pre-Swap       | Guest-Valid.   |

### 8.25.3 Status Codes

**Table 100. Status Codes for `SNP_PAGE_RECLAIM`**

| Status                          | Condition                                                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SUCCESS</code>            | Successful completion.                                           |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>    | The address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned. |
| <code>INVALID_PARAM</code>      | MBZ fields are not zero.                                         |
| <code>INVALID_PAGE_STATE</code> | The page is not in the correct state.                            |
| <code>INVALID_PAGE_SIZE</code>  | The page is not the correct size.                                |

## 8.26 `SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH`

This command combines 512 pages of 4 KB in size into a single 2 MB page in the RMP.

### 8.26.1 Parameters

**Table 101. Layout of the `CMDBUF_SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH` Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name                    | Description                         |
|-------------|-------|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | <code>PAGE_PADDR</code> | Bits 63:12 of the sPAs of the page. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —                       | Reserved. Must be zero.             |

## 8.26.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `PAGE_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that each 4 KB page in the 2 MB region starting at `PAGE_PADDR` meets the following requirements.

- Each page has `RMP.PageSize` that indicates a 4 KB page.
- Each page has `RMP.Immutable` equal to 1.
- Each page has `RMP.VMSA` equal to 0.
- All pages are in the same state.
- If VMPLs are enabled, then all pages have identical VMPL permissions.
- All pages have `RMP.ASID` set identically and must not be zero.

If any of the above checks fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the range of guest physical pages are 2 MB total in size, 2 MB aligned, and consecutive. The firmware also checks that `PAGE_PADDR` is 2 MB aligned. If either check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware then turns the 4 KB pages into one 2 MB page. The resulting page is in the same state as its constituent pages.

## 8.26.3 Status Codes

**Table 102. Status Codes for `SNP_PAGE_UNSMASH`**

| Status                 | Condition                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                          |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                        |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned. |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                              |

## 8.27 SNP\_GUEST\_REQUEST

This command sends a guest message to the firmware and returns the firmware response. See *Chapter 7* for details.

## 8.27.1 Parameters

**Table 103. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_GUEST\_REQUEST Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name           | Description                                                                       |
|-------------|-------|--------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                  |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                           |
| 08h         | 63:0  | In     | REQUEST_PADDR  | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of the request message. See <i>Chapter 7</i> for details.    |
| 10h         | 63:0  | In     | RESPONSE_PADDR | Bits 63:0 of the sPA of the response message<br>See <i>Chapter 7</i> for details. |

**Table 104. Message Header Format**

| Byte Offset | Bits   | Name        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|--------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 255:0  | AUTHTAG     | Message authentication tag. If the authentication tag for the designated algorithm is shorter than 32 B, the first bytes of AUTHTAG are used and the remaining bytes must be zero.<br>The authentication tag authenticates the bytes from 20h to the end of the encrypted payload. |
| 20h         | 127:64 | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|             | 63:0   | MSG_SEQNO   | The sequence number for this message. Used to construct the IV.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 30h         | 7:0    | ALGO        | The AEAD used to encrypt this message. See <i>Table 105 below</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 31h         | 7:0    | HDR_VERSION | The version of the message header. Set to 1h for this specification.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 32h         | 15:0   | HDR_SIZE    | The size of the message header in bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 34h         | 7:0    | MSG_TYPE    | The type of the payload. See <i>Table 106 below</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 35h         | 7:0    | MSG_VERSION | The version of the payload.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 36h         | 15:0   | MSG_SIZE    | The size of the payload in bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 38h         | 31:0   | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3Ch         | 7:0    | MSG_VMPCK   | The ID of the VMPCK used to protect this message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3Dh         | 7:0    | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3Eh         | 15:0   | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 40h-5Fh     | —      | —           | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 60h         | —      | PAYLOAD     | Encrypted payload.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

**Table 105. AEAD Algorithm Encodings**

| Value                         | Algorithm   |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 0                             | Invalid     |
| 1                             | AES-256-GCM |
| All other encodings reserved. |             |

**Table 106. Message Type Encodings**

| Value                         | Message Type              | Message Version |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 0                             | Invalid                   | —               |
| 1                             | SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ         | 1               |
| 2                             | SNP_MSG_CPUID_RSP         | 1               |
| 3                             | SNP_MSG_KEY_REQ           | 3               |
| 4                             | SNP_MSG_KEY_RSP           | 3               |
| 5                             | SNP_MSG_REPORT_REQ        | 1               |
| 6                             | SNP_MSG_REPORT_RSP        | 1               |
| 7                             | SNP_MSG_EXPORT_REQ        | 1               |
| 8                             | SNP_MSG_EXPORT_RSP        | 1               |
| 9                             | Reserved (MSG_IMPORT_REQ) | —               |
| 10                            | Reserved (MSG_IMPORT_RSP) | —               |
| 11                            | Reserved (MSG_ABSORB_REQ) | —               |
| 12                            | Reserved (MSG_ABSORB_RSP) | —               |
| 13                            | SNP_MSG_VMRK_REQ          | 1               |
| 14                            | SNP_MSG_VMRK_RSP          | 1               |
| 15                            | SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_REQ   | 2               |
| 16                            | SNP_MSG_ABSORB_NOMA_RSP   | 2               |
| 17                            | SNP_MSG_TSC_INFO_REQ      | 1               |
| 18                            | SNP_MSG_TSC_INFO_RSP      | 1               |
| 27                            | SNP_MSG_CONFIG_VIOMMU_REQ | 1               |
| 28                            | SNP_MSG_CONFIG_VIOMMU_RSP | 1               |
| 31                            | SNP_MSG_GET_CSR_REQ       | 1               |
| 32                            | SNP_MSG_GET_CSR_RSP       | 1               |
| 37                            | SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_REQ  | 1               |
| 38                            | SNP_MSG_GET_TPM_INFO_RSP  | 1               |
| All other encodings reserved. |                           | —               |

## 8.27.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that the page at `GCTX_PADDR` is in the Context state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_RUNNING` states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `REQUEST_PADDR` and `RESPONSE_PADDR` are valid sPAs. The firmware checks that the response message will not cross a 4kB system physical page boundary when written. If either of these checks fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the response page is a Firmware page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware constructs the incoming 96-bit IV. The firmware sets bits `IV[63:0]` to the `MSG_SEQNO` and bits `IV[95:64]` to 0h.

The firmware unwraps the message by setting the parameters of `Aead_Unwrap()` to the following:

- C: PAYLOAD
- A: Bytes 30h to 5Fh of the request message
- IV: Constructed IV
- K: The guest's VMPCCK identified by `MSG_VMPCCK`
- T: AUTHTAG

The firmware checks that the `Aead_Unwrap()` did not indicate inauthenticity. If the `Aead_Unwrap()` function did report inauthenticity, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`.

The firmware checks that the guest's message count of the VMPCCK used to unwrap this message will not overflow by processing this message. If this check fails, the firmware returns `AEAD_OFLOW`.

The firmware checks that `MSG_SEQNO` is one greater than the guest's message count for the VMPCCK used to unwrap this message. If not, the firmware returns `AEAD_OFLOW`.

The firmware checks that `HDR_VERSION` is supported by this ABI version and that the `HDR_SIZE` matches the expected size for the given header version. When `HDR_VERSION` is 1h, then `HDR_SIZE` must be 60h. The firmware also checks that `MSG_VERSION` is supported by this ABI. If any of these checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

The firmware checks that MSG\_TYPE is a valid message type. The firmware then checks that MSG\_SIZE is large enough to hold the indicated message type at the indicated message version. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

Message types of SNP\_MSG\_IMPORT\_REQ, SNP\_MSG\_IMPORT\_RSP, SNP\_MSG\_ABSORB\_REQ, and SNP\_MSG\_ABSORB\_RSP are unsupported. If these types are used, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

The firmware creates a message in response to the guest's message. The firmware sets MSG\_SEQNO of the response message to one greater than the MSG\_SEQNO of the request message. The firmware then constructs a new IV and wraps the message by setting the parameters of Aead\_Wrap() to the following:

- P: PAYLOAD plaintext
- A: Bytes 30h to 5Fh of the request message
- IV: Bits 95:0 of the IV
- K: The guest's VMPCCK identified by VMPCCK\_ID

The firmware always encrypts the response with the same key that the guest used to encrypt the request even if a guest message triggers a key change.

The firmware constructs the IV by setting IV[63:0] to MSG\_SEQNO and setting IV[95:64] to 0h.

The firmware writes the resulting authentication tag into AUTHTAG and writes the ciphertext into PAYLOAD.

The firmware then increments the guest's message count for the VMPCCK count by two to account for both the request message and the firmware's response message.

### 8.27.3 Status Codes

**Table 107. Status Codes for SNP\_GUEST\_REQUEST**

| Status                 | Condition                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                          |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero or a feature unsupported.               |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned. |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                           |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                          |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not activated.                                     |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                              |
| INVALID_PAGE_SIZE      | A page was not the correct size.                                |

| Status          | Condition                                                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AEAD_OFLOW      | The message sequence number was incorrect, or the guest's message count would overflow. |
| BAD_MEASUREMENT | The message failed to authenticate.                                                     |
| UPDATE_FAILED   | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed.               |

## 8.28 SNP\_DBG\_DECRYPT

This command enables developers to read encrypted memory in debug-enabled VMs.

### 8.28.1 Parameters

**Table 108. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_DBG\_DECRYPT Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                           |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the source 4 KB region to decrypt.                |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the destination page to store the decrypted data. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |

### 8.28.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` or `GSTATE_RUNNING` guest state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`. The firmware then checks that the guest is activated. If not, the firmware returns `INACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that the guest's policy allows debugging. If not, the firmware returns `POLICY_FAILURE`.

The firmware checks that SRC\_PADDR and DST\_PADDR are valid sPAs. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that the page containing the 4 KB region to decrypt is a Pre-Guest, Pre-Swap, Guest-Invalid, or Guest-Valid page. The firmware also checks that the destination page is a Firmware page. If either check fails, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

The firmware checks that the source page containing the 4 KB region is owned by the indicated guest. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_OWNER.

**Note:** This command always operates on 4 KB regions despite the page size indicated by the RMP entries. If the underlying page is a 2 MB page, the firmware uses the RMP entry for the 2 MB page for the RMP checks.

The firmware decrypts the contents of the 4 KB region at SRC\_PADDR with the guest's VEK and writes the plaintext to DST\_PADDR.

### 8.28.3 Status Codes

**Table 109. Status Codes for SNP\_DBG\_DECRYPT**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is not valid.                                                   |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not active.                                                  |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the RUNNING or LAUNCH states.                         |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest policy disallows debugging.                                     |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid or misaligned.                                      |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page is not in the correct state.                                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | A page is not owned by the guest.                                         |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.29 SNP\_DBG\_ENCRYPT

This command enables developers to write to encrypted memory in debug-enabled VMs.

## 8.29.1 Parameters

**Table 110. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_DBG\_ENCRYPT Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                                |
|-------------|-------|--------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 63:12 | In     | GCTX_PADDR | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                           |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |
| 08h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the 4 KB region to be encrypted.                  |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |
| 10h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR  | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the 4 KB region page to store the encrypted data. |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                    |

## 8.29.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`. The firmware then checks that the guest is activated. If not, the firmware returns `INACTIVE`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` or `GSTATE_RUNNING` guest state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the guest's policy allows debugging. If not, the firmware returns `POLICY_FAILURE`.

The firmware checks that `SRC_PADDR` and `DST_PADDR` are valid sPAs. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the destination 4 KB region is a Pre-Swap or a Pre-Guest page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the destination page containing the 4 KB region is owned by the indicated guest. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_OWNER`.

**Note:** This command always operates on 4 KB regions despite the page size indicated by the RMP entries. If the underlying page is a 2 MB page, the firmware uses the RMP entry for the 2 MB page for the RMP checks.

The firmware encrypts the contents of the source 4 KB region at SRC\_PADDR with the guest's VEK and writes the ciphertext to DST\_PADDR.

### 8.29.3 Status Codes

**Table 111. Status Codes for SNP\_DBG\_ENCRYPT**

| Status                 | Condition                                                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                                    |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                                    |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                                     |
| INACTIVE               | The guest is not activated.                                               |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the RUNNING or LAUNCH states.                         |
| POLICY_FAILURE         | The guest policy disallows debugging.                                     |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid or misaligned.                                      |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                                  |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page is not in the correct state.                                       |
| INVALID_PAGE_OWNER     | A page is not owned by the guest.                                         |
| UPDATE_FAILED          | Update of the firmware internal state or a guest context page has failed. |

## 8.30 SNP\_PAGE\_SET\_STATE

This command transitions Firmware pages to the HV-fixed page state. This operation cannot be undone until there is an RMP reinitialization or a system reset.

This command is available starting in version 1.52.

### 8.30.1 Parameters

**Table 112. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_PAGE\_SET\_STATE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name       | Description                                                   |
|-------------|------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH     | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                       |
| 4h          | 31:0 | —      | —          | Reserved.                                                     |
| 8h          | 63:0 | In     | LIST_PADDR | sPA of the RANGE_LIST structure. See <i>Table 113 below</i> . |

**Table 113. Layout of the RANGE\_LIST Structure**

| Byte Offset      | Bits | Name   | Description                                                     |
|------------------|------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h               | 31:0 | N      | Number of elements in the RANGE_ARRAY.                          |
| 4h               | 31:0 | —      | Reserved. Should be zero.                                       |
| 8h – (8h + N*16) |      | RANGES | Array of N elements of type RANGE. See <i>Table 114 below</i> . |

**Table 114. Layout of the RANGE Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name       | Description                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|-------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 63:12 | BASE       | Specifies the sPA of the first byte of the range. The address is formed by setting bits [63:12] to BASE and bits [11:0] to 0h. |
|             | 11:0  | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                        |
| 8h          | 31:0  | PAGE_COUNT | Number of 4kB pages in this range.                                                                                             |
| Ch          | 31:0  | —          | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                        |

### 8.30.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

If `LIST_PADDR` is an invalid sPA, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. If a range in `RANGES` contains an invalid address, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

Each `RANGE` element must be 2MB aligned. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PARAM`.

The firmware checks that the pages containing the ranges enumerated in the `RANGES` structure are either in the Default or Firmware page state with `RMP.Page_Size` set to 0. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`. If the `PAGE_COUNT` field of a range is zero, the firmware ignores the range as if it were not provided.

The firmware ignores pages that are in the Default page state. For pages in the Firmware state, the firmware transitions the page to the HV-fixed page state.

If the firmware detects an error while processing the ranges, it will revert any changes made to the RMP before returning an error status code.

### 8.30.3 Status Codes

**Table 115. Status Codes for SNP\_PAGE\_SET\_STATE**

| Status  | Condition              |
|---------|------------------------|
| SUCCESS | Successful completion. |

| Status                 | Condition                              |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state. |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid or misaligned.   |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page is not in the correct state.    |

## 8.31 SNP\_VLEK\_LOAD

This command loads a VLEK to supplant the VCEK in scenarios where the hypervisor wishes to use a signing key that is not chip unique.

The hypervisor retrieves the wrapped VLEK hashsticks from the AMD KDS service by providing the `CHIP_ID` and TCB version similarly to the retrieval of the VCEK. The KDS will then provide a wrapped VLEK. The hypervisor then invokes this command to load the retrieved VLEK.

The version of the VLEK indicated in the `TCB_VERSION` of the `WRAPPED_VLEK` structure must be equal to the `ReportedTcb` at the time of load. If any firmware command causes the `ReportedTcb` to change, the previously loaded VLEK is deleted and a VLEK associated with the new `ReportedTcb` must be reloaded.

On `SNP_SHUTDOWN`, the VLEK is deleted.

This command is available in version 1.54. For firmware versions 1.55 and beyond, this command is present when the VLEK feature bit is set.

### 8.31.1 Parameters

**Table 116. Layout of the `CMDBUF_SNP_VLEK_LOAD` Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name                 | Description                                                                                                 |
|-------------|------|--------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH               | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                     |
| 4h          | 7:0  | In     | VLEK_WRAPPED_VERSION | Version of the wrapped VLEK hashstick structure. Must be 0h.                                                |
| 5h-7h       |      | In     | —                    | Reserved.                                                                                                   |
| 8h          | 63:0 | In     | VLEK_WRAPPED_PADDR   | SPA of a wrapped VLEK hashstick. The wrapped VLEK hashstick format is specified in <i>Table 117 below</i> . |

**Table 117. Layout of the `WRAPPED_VLEK_HASHSTICK` Structure (Version 0h)**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description                      |
|-------------|------|------|----------------------------------|
| 0h          | 95:0 | IV   | IV used to wrap chip-unique key. |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name          | Description                                                                   |
|-------------|-------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ch-Fh       |       | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                       |
| 10h–18Fh    |       | VLEK_WRAPPED  | VLEK hashstick wrapped with a chip-unique key using AES-256-GCM.              |
| 190h        | 63:0  | TCB_VERSION   | The TCB version associated with this VLEK hashstick.                          |
| 198h–19Fh   |       | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                       |
| 1A0h        | 127:0 | VLEK_AUTH_TAG | AES-256-GCM authentication tag of the wrapped VLEK hashstick and TCB_VERSION. |

### 8.31.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware reads the wrapped VLEK hashstick structure pointed at by `VLEK_WRAPPED_PADDR`. If `TCB_VERSION` of the VLEK structure is not equal to the `ReportedTcb`, the command fails with `BAD_SVN`.

The firmware uses AES-256-GCM to unwrap the VLEK and to authenticate the provided VLEK hashstick structure. The `VLEK_WRAPPED` field is encrypted, and bytes 190h–19Fh are additionally authenticated data. If the authentication fails, the firmware returns `BAD_MEASUREMENT`.

The firmware saves the unwrapped VLEK hashstick to internal memory.

On failure, this command does not delete the existing VLEK, if present.

### 8.31.3 Status Codes

**Table 118. Status Codes for `SNP_VLEK_LOAD`**

| Status                 | Condition                                                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                              |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                              |
| BAD_SVN                | <code>ReportedTcb</code> is not equal to <code>TCB_VERSION</code> . |
| BAD_MEASUREMENT        | Failed to authenticate wrapped VLEK hashstick.                      |
| INVALID_PARAM          | Unexpected length of wrapped VLEK hashstick.                        |

## 8.32 SNP\_TSC\_INFO

The SNP\_TSC\_INFO command outputs GUEST\_TSC\_SCALE, GUEST\_TSC\_OFFSET, and TSC\_FACTOR for a given guest.

### 8.32.1 Parameters

**Table 119: CMDBUF\_SNP\_TSC\_INFO Command Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name           | Description                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0  | LENGTH         | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                                     |
| 4h          | 31:0  | —              | Reserved.                                                                                                                   |
| 8h          | 63:12 | GCTX_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the system physical address of a page donated to the firmware by the hypervisor to contain the guest context. |
|             | 11:0  | —              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                     |
| 10h         | 63:0  | TSC_INFO_PADDR | System physical address of a location the firmware will write the TSC_INFO structures. See <i>Table 38</i> .                |

### 8.32.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware then checks that GCTX\_PADDR is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_GUEST.

The firmware checks that the TSC\_INFO\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS.

The firmware checks that TSC\_INFO\_PADDR page is a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

### 8.32.3 Status Codes

**Table 120. Status Codes for SNP\_TSC\_INFO**

| Status                 | Condition                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                          |
| INVALID_PARAM          | MBZ fields are not zero.                                        |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned. |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                           |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                          |

## 8.33 SNP\_HV\_REPORT\_REQ

The Host OS can directly request that the firmware construct a guest attestation report.

A Host OS requests an attestation report by constructing an SNP\_HV\_REPORT\_REQ as specified in *Table 121 below*.

### 8.33.1 Parameters

**Table 121. CMDBUF\_SNP\_HV\_REPORT\_REQ Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|-------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0  | LENGTH          | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 4h          | 31:2  | —               | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|             | 1:0   | KEY_SEL         | Selects which key to use for generating the signature.<br>0: Sign with VLEK if VLEK is installed. Otherwise, sign with the key indicated by CsVcekPref.<br>1: Sign with legacy VCEK.<br>2: Sign with VLEK.<br>3: Sign with chip secret VCEK. |
| 08h         | 63:12 | GCTX_PADDR      | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the guest context page.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 11:0  | —               | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 10h         | 63:0  | HV_REPORT_PADDR | sPA of a location the firmware will write the SNP_MSG_REPORT_RSP Message Structure.                                                                                                                                                          |

### 8.33.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware then checks that `GCTX_PADDR` is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`.

The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_RUNNING` states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `HV_REPORT_PADDR` is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that `HV_REPORT_PADDR` page is a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

Upon receiving a request for an attestation report, the firmware constructs the report according to *Table 27*.

The firmware generates a report ID for each guest that persists with the guest instance throughout its lifetime. In each attestation report, the report ID is placed in `REPORT_ID`. If the guest has an associated migration agent, the `REPORT_ID_MA` is filled in with the report ID of the migration agent.

If `MaskChipKey` is 0, the firmware signs the attestation report with either the VCEK or VLEK based on the key selection made in `KEY_SEL`. The firmware will return `INVALID_KEY` if any of the following conditions occur:

- `KEY_SEL` is 0, the VLEK is not loaded, and `VcekDis` is 1.
- `KEY_SEL` is 1 and `VcekDis` is 1.
- `KEY_SEL` is 2 and the VLEK is not loaded.
- `KEY_SEL` is 3, and `VcekDis` is 1 or `CsVcekEn` is 0.

The `KEY_SEL` field will be processed as follows based on the `CsVcekEn` and `CsVcekPref` settings in the target guest context.

- '00': If VLEK is installed, sign with VLEK. If no VLEK is installed, and `CsVcekPref` is 1, use chip secret VCEK. Otherwise, use legacy VCEK.
- '01': Legacy VCEK used for signing.
- '10': VLEK used for signing.
- '11': If `CsVcekEn` is 1 then chip secret VCEK used for signing.

The firmware uses the systemwide `ReportedTcb` value as the TCB version to derive the VCEK, VLEK, or CSVCEK. This value is set by the hypervisor. The firmware guarantees that the `ReportedTcb` value is never greater than the installed TCB version.

If MaskChipKey is 1, the firmware writes zeroes into the SIGNATURE field instead of signing the report.

### 8.33.3 Status Codes

**Table 122. Status Codes for CMDBUF\_SNP\_HV\_REPORT\_REQ**

| Status                 | Condition                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                          |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                           |
| INVALID_GUEST_STATE    | The guest is not in the correct state.                          |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An address is invalid for use by the firmware or is misaligned. |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A page was in the incorrect state.                              |
| INVALID_PARAM          | Incorrect parameter or MBZ fields are not zero.                 |
| INVALID_KEY            | The selected key is invalid.                                    |

### 8.33.4 Return Information

See *Table 27* for the returned data.

## 8.34 SNP\_INIT\_START

Initializes the RMP while SYS\_CFG[SNPE] is not set. The detailed description of the actions performed by the firmware upon invocation of this command is described in *Section 5.2*. This command takes no arguments.

Software does not need to suspend executions of legacy (non-SEV) guests or set VM\_HSAVE\_PA to 0h during this command. However, software and devices must not write to the RMP starting at invocation of this command until SNP\_INIT\_FINISH command completes successfully and the SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is returned to UNINIT. This exclusion also applies to the SNP x86 instruction set.

**Note:** Execution of the SNP x86 instruction set will fault if SYS\_CFG[SNPE<sub>n</sub>] is not set.

### 8.34.1 Parameters

There are no parameters for this command.

### 8.34.2 Actions

The firmware checks that SNP is in the UNINIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE. FW checks that the RMP is initialized. If not, the firmware

returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`. Firmware checks that the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is `UNINIT`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware ensures the following system requirements are met:

- `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` is set across all cores.
- `SYS_CFG[MFDM]` must be set across all cores.
- `HWCR[SmmLock]` (MSR `C001_0015`) must be set identically across all cores.

The following MSRs must be set identically across all cores:

- All MTRRs
- `IORR_BASE`
- `IORR_MASK`
- `TOM`
- `TOM2`

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

The firmware ensures that the following requirements for the RMP have been met:

- `RMP_BASE` and `RMP_END` must be set identically across all cores.
- `RMP_BASE` must be 1 MB aligned.
- `RMP_END – RMP_BASE + 1` must be a multiple of 1 MB.
- RMP is large enough to protect itself.

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

Except for `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]`, the firmware saves each of the checked MSR values and the locations of the event log, PPR log, and completion wait buffers of the IOMMU to its internal memory.

The firmware makes the RMP read-only. Software must suspend guests when this command is invoked. The sequence of actions taken by FW are described in *Section 5.2.1* for non-segmented RMP and *Section 5.2.2* for segmented RMP (RST). The firmware marks all pages as hypervisor except:

- The pages containing the RMP are set to the Firmware state.
- The pages containing the IOMMU event log, PPR log, and completion wait buffers are read-only and cannot be assigned to a guest.
- All MMIO ranges are set to the HV-fixed state.

The firmware also initializes any microarchitectural data structures within the RMP.

The firmware sets the `RmpInstallPending` internal flag and sets the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` to `SNP_PREINIT_CONTINUE_PENDING`.

### 8.34.3 Status Codes

**Table 123. Status Codes for SNP\_INIT\_START**

| Status                 | Condition                                                     |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                        |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform and/or the RMP table is not in the UNINIT state. |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An invalid address was provided.                              |
| INVALID_CONFIG         | An invalid configuration exists.                              |

## 8.35 SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE

Continues the initialization of the RMP. The detailed description of the actions performed by FW upon invocation of this command is described in *Section 5.2*. Before invoking this command, software must ensure that the SNP\_PREINIT\_STATE is SNP\_PREINIT\_CONTINUE\_PENDING. Guests cannot run while this command is executing.

### 8.35.1 Parameters

**Table 124. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_INIT\_CONTINUE Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name          | Description                                                |
|-------------|------|--------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH        | Length of this command buffer.                             |
| 4h          | 31:3 | —      | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                    |
|             | 2    | In     | TIO_EN        | 0: Trusted I/O is not enabled<br>1: Trusted I/O is enabled |
|             | 1    | In     | LIST_PADDR_EN | 0: LIST_PADDR is not valid<br>1: LIST_PADDR is valid       |
|             | 0    | In     | CANCEL        | Results in RMP being returned to the uninitialized state.  |
| 8h          | 63:0 | In     | LIST_PADDR    | SPA of the RANGE_LIST structure. See <i>Table 113</i> .    |
| 10h-39h     | —    | —      | —             | Reserved. Must be zero.                                    |

### 8.35.2 Actions

The firmware checks that SNP is in the UNINIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE. The firmware checks that the RmpInstallPending and RstInstallPending are cleared. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

Firmware checks that the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is `SNP_PREINIT_CONTINUE_PENDING`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

If `LIST_PADDR_EN` is 1, then the firmware checks that `LIST_PADDR` is a valid SPA. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. If a range in `RANGES` contains an invalid address, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. For this check, a range overlapping the RMP is not considered an invalid address. Depending on the setting of `TIO_EN`, the firmware will initialize regions in the IOMMU.

If `CANCEL` is set, the firmware performs the following actions and then returns `SUCCESS`.

- Removes the write protection on the RMP.
- Marks that the RMP must be re-initialized before `SNP_INIT_EX` can successfully complete.
- `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is set to `UNINIT`
- Clears `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` and `SYS_CFG[VMPLEn]` if they were set.
- SNP enforcement of IOMMU protection is disabled

The firmware performs the following checks:

- `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` is set on all cores.
- `SYS_CFG[VMPLEn]` is set on all cores.

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

The firmware initializes the IOMMU to perform RMP enforcement. The firmware then forces a TLB invalidation across all cores and IOMMUs.

Finally, the FW enables `VM_HSAVE_PA` so that guests can resume and sets the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` to `SNP_PREINIT_FINISH_PENDING`.

### 8.35.3 Status Codes

**Table 125. Status Codes for `SNP_INIT_CONTINUE`**

| Status                              | Condition                                             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SUCCESS</code>                | Successful completion.                                |
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | The platform is not in the <code>UNINIT</code> state. |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>        | An invalid address was provided.                      |
| <code>INVALID_CONFIG</code>         | An invalid configuration exists.                      |

## 8.36 `SNP_INIT_FINISH`

`SNP_INIT_FINISH` is the last command invoked in creation of an RMP. The detailed description of the actions performed by the firmware upon invocation of this command is described in *Section*

5.2. Before invoking this command, software must ensure that the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is `SNP_PREINIT_FINISH_PENDING`. Guests cannot run while this command is executing.

### 8.36.1 Parameters

**Table 126. Layout of the `CMDBUF_SNP_INIT_FINISH` Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name   | Description                                               |
|-------------|------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                   |
| 4h          | 31:1 | —      | —      | Reserved. Must be zero.                                   |
|             | 0    | In     | CANCEL | Results in RMP being returned to the uninitialized state. |
| 8h-1fh      | —    | —      | —      | Reserved. Must be zero.                                   |

### 8.36.2 Actions

The firmware checks that SNP is in the UNINIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`. FW checks that the `RmpInstallPending` and `RstInstallPending` are cleared. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`. The firmware checks that the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is `SNP_PREINIT_FINISH_PENDING`. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

If CANCEL is set, the firmware performs the following actions and then returns `SUCCESS`.

- Removes the write protection on the RMP.
- Marks that the RMP must be re-initialized before `SNP_INIT_EX` can successfully complete.
- `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` is set to UNINIT.
- Clears `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` and `SYS_CFG[VMPLEn]` if they were set.
- SNP enforcement of IOMMU protection is disabled.

The firmware performs the following checks:

- `SYS_CFG[SNPEn]` is set on all cores.
- `SYS_CFG[VMPLEn]` is set on all cores.

If any of the above checks fail, the firmware returns `INVALID_CONFIG`.

The firmware initializes the IOMMU to perform RMP enforcement. The firmware then forces a TLB invalidation across all cores and IOMMUs.

Finally, the FW enables `VM_HSAVE_PA` so that guests can resume and sets the `SNP_PREINIT_STATE` to `SNP_PREINIT_STATE_UNINIT`.

### 8.36.3 Status Codes

**Table 127. Status Codes for SNP\_INIT\_FINISH**

| Status                 | Condition                                |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                   |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the UNINIT state. |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | An invalid address was provided.         |
| INVALID_CONFIG         | An invalid configuration exists.         |

## 8.37 SNP\_VERIFY\_MITIGATION

The SNP\_VERIFY\_MITIGATION command allows the Host OS/HV (Host) to initiate commands to the SEV firmware to perform vulnerability mitigation operation initiation, and to request vulnerability mitigation supported and vulnerability mitigation verification status. The command action executions are specified and then applied to specific designated vulnerability mitigations.

### 8.37.1 Parameters

**Table 128. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_VERIFY\_MITIGATION Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH       | Length of this structure in bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 04h         | 15:0 | In     | SUBCOMMAND   | Mitigation sub-command for the firmware to execute.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 06h-07h     | —    | —      | —            | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 08h         | 63:0 | In     | VECTOR       | VECTOR is only valid for MIT_REQ_VERIFY sub-command.<br>The VECTOR Bit field contains a single bit specifying the vulnerability mitigation to process and/or validate. Must be a single bit within the vector field value. |
| 10h         | 31:2 | —      | —            | Reserved. MBZ.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|             | 1    | In     | SRC_PADDR_EN | 0: SRC_PADDR is not valid<br>1: SRC_PADDR is valid<br>If SRC_PADDR_EN is set (valid) then SRC_PADDR must be set. If SRC_PADDR is not set, then SRC_PADDR must be zero.                                                     |

| Byte Offset | Bits  | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-------|--------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | 0     | In     | DST_PADDR_EN | 0: DST_PADDR is not valid<br>1: DST_PADDR is valid<br>If DST_PADDR_EN is set (valid) then DST_PADDR must be set. If DST_PADDR is not set, then DST_PADDR must be zero. |
| 14h-17h     | —     | —      | —            | Reserved. MBZ.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 18h         | 63:12 | In     | SRC_PADDR    | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the 4 KB region to contain optional input data.<br><b>Note:</b> SRC_PADDR is intended for future use.                                         |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —            | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                |
| 20h         | 63:12 | In     | DST_PADDR    | Bits 63:12 of the sPA of the 4 KB region page to contain optional output data.                                                                                         |
|             | 11:0  | —      | —            | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                                                                                                                |
| 28h-3Fh     | —     | —      | —            | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                              |

Table 129. Command Descriptions

| SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION Sub-Command | Sub-Command Number | VECTOR                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MIT_REQ_STATUS                    | 0h                 | MBZ                              | Command to request the firmware to return information regarding the currently supported (available) mitigations, and then the verified (processed and completed) mitigations.<br>If DST_PADDR_EN is set, DST_PADDR will be populated with the SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION_DST_PADDR structure. |
| MIT_REQ_VERIFY                    | 1h                 | 64-bit field with single bit set | Command to request the firmware to initiate the mitigation verification operations for a specific mitigation.<br>If DST_PADDR_EN is set, then the command additionally populates DST_PADDR with the SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION_DST_PADDR structure.                                           |

Table 130. Layout of the SNP\_VERIFY\_MITIGATION\_DST\_PADDR Structure

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name                | Description                                       |
|-------------|------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 63:0 | MIT_VERIFIED_VECTOR | Bit vector of vulnerability mitigations verified. |

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8h          | 63:0 | MIT_SUPPORTED_VECTOR | Bit vector of vulnerability mitigations supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 10h         | 31:0 | MIT_FAILURE_STATUS   | <p>The firmware provides status of the verification operation:</p> <p>0h: No error condition</p> <p>1h: Invalid SoC version or invalid platform</p> <p>2h: Microcode version check failure</p> <p>3h: Verification failure</p> <p>Possible verification failures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WBINVD not executed during the mitigation process.</li> <li>• Incorrect ucode loaded.</li> <li>• Ucode not loaded on all CPU cores.</li> </ul> <p>4h: Other or hardware internal failure</p> <p>5h: Shutdown required</p> <p>6h: RMP re-initialization required</p> <p>7h: Committed TCB is too low</p> <p>8h: Hardware registers are in use</p> <p>9h-FFFFh: Reserved.</p> |
| 14h-FFFh    | –    | –                    | Reserved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Table 131. Layout of the SNP\_VERIFY\_MITIGATION\_SRC\_PADDR Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description |
|-------------|------|------|-------------|
| 0h-FFFh     | –    | –    | Reserved.   |

### 8.37.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the COMMAND value is equal to a valid command range. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM.

If DST\_PADDR\_EN is set to 1, then the firmware checks that the DST\_PADDR should be set for this command. If DST\_PADDR should not be set, then the firmware returns INVALID\_PARAM. If DST\_PADDR is a valid parameter, then the firmware checks that the DST\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The same checks also apply to SRC\_PADDR\_EN and SRC\_PADDR.

If DST\_PADDR is valid and RMP tables are enabled, then the firmware checks that the page is either a Firmware or Default page. If not, then the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE. If DST\_PADDR is valid and RMP tables are not enabled, then the DST\_PADDR page can be in any page state and is not checked by the firmware.

If the command is `MIT_REQ_VERIFY`, then the firmware executes the mitigation verification process for the requested vector bit. If the verification process is successful, the firmware sets the corresponding vector bit to 1 in the internal completed vector value. If the verification process fails, the firmware sets the corresponding vector bit to 0 in the internal completed vector value.

The firmware will check the SNP firmware state based on the mitigation requirements, and if the SNP firmware state is incorrect, then the firmware will return `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

If `DST_PADDR_EN` is set, then the firmware sets the internal completed vector value (`MIT_VERIFIED_VECTOR`), the internal mitigation available value (`MIT_SUPPORTED_VECTOR`), and the failure status (`MIT_FAILURE_STATUS`) into the `DST_PADDR` locations according to the `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION_DST_PADDR` structure.

### 8.37.3 Status Codes

**Table 132. Status Codes for `SNP_VERIFY_MITIGATION`**

| Status                              | Condition                            |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>SUCCESS</code>                | Successful completion.               |
| <code>INVALID_ADDRESS</code>        | An address is invalid or misaligned. |
| <code>INVALID_PARAM</code>          | MBZ fields are not zero.             |
| <code>INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE</code> | SEV-SNP firmware state is invalid.   |
| <code>INVALID_PAGE_STATE</code>     | A page is not in the correct state.  |

## 8.38 FEATURE\_INFO

This command returns the contents of `CPUID Fn8000_0024` to provide information regarding the features present in the SEV firmware currently loaded. The caller provides the value of the `ECX` input index and returns the `CPUID` subfunction of that index. The `CPUID` instruction treats all subfunctions of `Fn8000_0024` as reserved.

The output of this command may be provided to the guest via the `CPUID` page in `SNP_LAUNCH_UPDATE` as well as through the `CPUID` reporting guest message `SNP_MSG_CPUID_REQ`.

This command is available if bit 3 of offset 8h of the output buffer of `SNP_PLATFORM_STATUS` is 1.

### 8.38.1 Parameters

**Table 133. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_FEATURE\_INFO Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name               | Description                                                                   |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | In     | LENGTH             | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                       |
| 4h          | 31:0 | In     | ECX_IN             | Subfunction index of CPUID Fn8000_0024.                                       |
| 8h          | 63:0 | In     | FEATURE_INFO_PADDR | System physical address of the FEATURE_INFO structure to write the output to. |

**Table 134. Layout of the FEATURE\_INFO Structure (Version 1h)**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name | Description      |
|-------------|------|------|------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | EAX  | See Section 4.13 |
| 4h          | 31:0 | EBX  |                  |
| 8h          | 31:0 | ECX  |                  |
| Ch          | 31:0 | EDX  |                  |

### 8.38.2 Actions

The platform may be in any state when this command is called.

The firmware checks the FEATURE\_INFO\_PADDR is a valid address, is 8-byte aligned, and does not cross a page boundary. If any of these checks fail, the firmware returns **INVALID\_PARAM**.

If the SNP firmware state is **INIT**, the FEATURE\_INFO\_PADDR page must be either a Firmware page or Default page. If not, the firmware returns **INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE**.

If the platform state is **UNINIT**, the firmware does not check the state or size of the page.

The firmware writes feature information into the FEATURE\_INFO structure at FEATURE\_INFO\_PADDR. The information written into FEATURE\_INFO is determined by ECX\_IN. Section 4.13 specifies the returned information for each ECX\_IN.

Fn8000\_0024\_x00 is always valid when this command is present. To determine if other indices are valid, the MaxIndex (Fn8000\_0024\_EAX\_x00[31:0]) indicates the maximum valid subfunction index. If ECX\_IN is greater than MaxIndex, then this command will return **INVALID\_PARAM** and will not write to the FEATURE\_INFO structure.

### 8.38.3 Status Codes

**Table 135. Status Codes for SNP\_FEATURE\_INFO**

| Status             | Condition                                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS            | Successful completion.                            |
| INVALID_PARAM      | Incorrect parameter or out of range ECX_IN value. |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE | Incorrect page state.                             |

## 8.39 SNP\_CSVCEK\_CERT

This command returns the certificate chain associated with the chip secret VCEK.

### 8.39.1 Parameters

**Table 136. Layout of the CMDBUF\_SNP\_CSVCEK Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name     | Description                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|------|--------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | IN     | LENGTH   | Length in bytes of this command buffer.                                                                                        |
| 04h         | 31:0 | —      | Reserved | MBZ                                                                                                                            |
| 08h         | 63:0 | In     | CERT_SLA | A scatter list address pointing to a buffer to be used for returning the CSVCEK certificate chain. See Chapter 4 of [SEV-TIO]. |

### 8.39.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `CERT_SLA` is a valid scatter list address. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the data pages of the buffer pointed at by `CERT_SLA` are all in the Firmware or Default page states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the capacity of the buffer provided is large enough to hold a the CSVCEK certificate chain. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_LENGTH`.

The certificate chain is returned with an object header, as defined in Chapter 4 of [SEV-TIO]. The header is given in *Table 137*.

**Table 137. DATA\_OBJECT\_HEADER for CSVCEK Certificate Object**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name         | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | DOBJ_ID      | 10h.                                                                                           |
| 4h          | 31:0 | DOBJ_LENGTH  | Length of the data object in bytes, including this header.                                     |
| 8h          | 15:0 | DOBJ_VERSION | Version of the data object structure.<br>Bit[7:0]: Minor version.<br>Bit[15:8]: Major version. |
| Ah          | 47:0 | –            | Reserved.                                                                                      |
| 10h         | –    | DOBJ_PAYLOAD |                                                                                                |

### 8.39.3 Status Codes

**Table 138. Status Codes for CMDBUF\_SNP\_SNP\_CSVCEK**

| Status                 | Condition                                           |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                              |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.              |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | A provided address was invalid.                     |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | A provided page was not in the expected page state. |
| INVALID_LENGTH         | A provided buffer was too small.                    |

## 8.40 SNP\_GET\_CORIM

This command will provide a list of CoRIM IDs as a sequence of byte strings, each of size 16 as per <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/draft-ietf-rats-corim#name-uuid>.

*Note: A single CoRIM can encompass multiple measurements.*

### 8.40.1 Parameters

**Table 139. CMDBUF\_SNP\_GET\_CORIM Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | In/Out | Name         | Description                                                                                                         |
|-------------|------|--------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | IN     | LENGTH       | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                                                                             |
| 04h         | 31:0 | –      | Reserved     | Mbz.                                                                                                                |
| 08h         | 63:0 | IN     | CORIM_ID_SLA | A scatter list address pointing to a buffer to be used for returning the CoRIM ID list. See Chapter 4 of [SEV-TIO]. |

## 8.40.2 Actions

The sequence of actions taken by firmware is as follows:

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that `CORIM_ID_SLA` is a valid scatter list address. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the data pages of the buffer pointed at by `CORIM_ID_SLA` are all in the Firmware or Default page states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the capacity of the buffer provided is large enough to hold the CoRIM ID list. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_LENGTH`.

The CoRIM ID list is returned with an object header, as defined in Chapter 4 of [SEV-TIO]. The header is given in *Table 140 below*. The VCEK-generated signature (P384) is appended to the end of the list and is included in the data object payload. The VCEK selected for signing (chip secret or legacy) will be based on what is supported by the platform (as indicated by the `CsVcek` bit in `FEATURE_INFO`). If the platform supports chip secret VCEK derivation, then that will be the keypair leveraged for signing.

**Table 140. DATA\_OBJECT\_HEADER for CoRIM ID List Object**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name         | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0 | DOBJ_ID      | 11h.                                                                                           |
| 4h          | 31:0 | DOBJ_LENGTH  | Length of the data object in bytes, including this header.                                     |
| 8h          | 15:0 | DOBJ_VERSION | Version of the data object structure.<br>Bit[7:0]: Minor version.<br>Bit[15:8]: Major version. |
| Ah          | 47:0 | —            | Reserved.                                                                                      |
| 10h         | 15:0 | NUM_CORIM_ID | Number of CoRIM IDs in returned list                                                           |
| 12h – 1Fh   |      | —            | Reserved.                                                                                      |
| 20h         | —    | DOBJ_PAYLOAD |                                                                                                |

### 8.40.3 Status Codes

**Table 141. Status Codes for CMDBUF\_SNP\_GET\_CORIM**

| Status                 | Condition                                             |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform state was invalid.                       |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address provided was invalid.                     |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | The provided page was not in the expected page state. |
| INVALID_LENGTH         | The buffer provided was too small.                    |

## 8.41 SNP\_GET\_CSR

The SNP\_GET\_CSR command allows the hypervisor to retrieve a null-signed CSR for the LDevID certificate. The hypervisor takes on responsibility for managing the certificate chain that results from this CSR.

### 8.41.1 Parameters

**Table 142. CMDBUF\_SNP\_GET\_CSR Message Structure**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name         | Description                                             |
|-------------|------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 00h         | 31:0 | LENGTH       | Length of this command buffer in bytes.                 |
| 4h          | 31:1 | —            | Reserved.                                               |
|             | 0    | CSR_SELECT   | 1: Return LDevID CSR<br>0: Return FMC_Alias CSR         |
| 08h-10h     | 63:0 | HV_CSR_PADDR | sPA of a location that the firmware will write the CSR. |

### 8.41.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PLATFORM\_STATE.

The firmware checks that HV\_CSR\_PADDR is a valid sPA. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_ADDRESS. The firmware checks that HV\_CSR\_PADDR page is a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns INVALID\_PAGE\_STATE.

The CSR (as indicated by CSR\_SELECT) is returned to the address specified by HV\_CSR\_PADDR. This address must be 4 kB page aligned. The firmware writes the CSR to HV\_CSR\_PADDR. The format of the returned CSR is given in *Table 143 below*.

**Table 143. Layout of the CSR**

| Byte Offset | Bits | Name      | Description                  |
|-------------|------|-----------|------------------------------|
| 0h          | 15:0 | NUM_BYTES | Number of bytes in CSR       |
| 2h          | 47:0 | —         | Reserved.                    |
| 08h         | —    | CSR       | Certificate signing request. |

### 8.41.3 Status Codes

**Table 144. Status Codes for CMDBUF\_SNP\_GET\_CSR**

| Status                 | Condition                                             |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address provided was invalid.                     |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | The provided page was not in the expected page state. |

## 8.42 SNP\_GET\_TPM\_INFO

The SNP\_GET\_TPM\_INFO host command returns the TPM\_INFO structure for a specific guest.

### 8.42.1 Parameters

**Table 145. Layout of the CMDBUF\_GET\_TPM\_INFO structure.**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name           | Description                                                       |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0h          | 31:0  | VERSION        | Version of this structure.                                        |
| 08h         | 63:12 | GCTX_PADDR     | Bits 63:12 of the SPA of the guest context page.                  |
|             | 11:0  | —              | Reserved. Must be zero.                                           |
| 10h         | 127:0 | NONCE          | The nonce to include in the TPM_INFO structure.                   |
| 20h         | 63:0  | TPM_INFO_PADDR | The SPA of destination buffer to write the TPM_INFO structure to. |

## 8.42.2 Actions

The firmware checks that the platform is in the INIT state. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE`.

The firmware checks that the `GCTX_PADDR` and `TPM_INFO_PADDR` are valid sPAs. If either check fails, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`. The firmware checks that the `TPM_INFO_PADDR` is aligned to a 4 KB boundary. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_ADDRESS`.

The firmware checks that the guest context page is a Context page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST`. The firmware checks that the page containing `TPM_INFO_PADDR` is a Firmware or Default page. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_PAGE_STATE`. The firmware checks that the guest is in the `GSTATE_LAUNCH` or `GSTATE_RUNNING` states. If not, the firmware returns `INVALID_GUEST_STATE`.

If the platform does not have a TPM to report, the command returns a `TPM_INFO` structure with the `PRESENT` bit cleared and the following fields zeroed.

If the platform does have a TPM, the firmware constructs a `TPM_INFO` object with the following

- The `NONCE` field is set to the `NONCE` value here.
- The `GUEST` field is cleared.
- The `PRESENT` bit is set.
- The `REPORT_ID` set to the `REPORT_ID` of the targeted guest.
- The `EK_DIGEST` is set to the collected EK digest.
- The `NV_INDEX` is set to the NV index used to retrieve the EK.
- The `SIGNATURE` is the signature over the `TPM_INFO` object.
- The `SIGNING_KEY` is set to indicate the key that signed this object.

The firmware writes the `TPM_INFO` structure to `TPM_INFO_PADDR`.

## 8.42.3 Status Codes

| Status                 | Condition                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| SUCCESS                | Successful completion.                                          |
| INVALID_PLATFORM_STATE | The platform is not in the INIT state.                          |
| INVALID_ADDRESS        | The address provided by the firmware was invalid or misaligned. |
| INVALID_GUEST          | The guest is invalid.                                           |
| INVALID_PAGE_STATE     | The provided page was not in the expected page state.           |

---

## Appendix A Common Algorithms

---

### A.1 Aead\_Wrap()

**Inputs:**

- P: Zero or more bytes to be encrypted and authenticated
- A: Zero or more bytes to be authenticated
- IV: Initialization vector (at most 96 bits)
- K: Key used to encrypt and authenticate the plaintext and AAD (256 bits)

**Outputs:**

- C: The encrypted plaintext
- T: Authentication tag (128 bits)

**Algorithm:**

1. If  $\text{len}(\text{IV}) < 96$ , then let  $\text{IV}' = 096 - \text{len}(\text{IV}) \parallel \text{IV}$ . Otherwise,  $\text{IV}' = \text{IV}$
2. Let  $(C, T) = \text{GCM-AEK}(\text{IV}', P, A)$
3. Return  $(C, T)$

### A.2 Aead\_Unwrap()

**Inputs:**

- C: Zero or more bytes to be decrypted and authenticated
- A: Zero or more bytes to be authenticated
- IV: Initialization vector (at most 96 bits)
- K: Key used to encrypt and authenticate the plaintext and AAD (256 bits)
- T: Authentication tag (128 bits)

**Outputs:**

- P: The decrypted plaintext or indication of inauthenticity

**Algorithm:**

1. If  $\text{len}(\text{IV}) < 96$ , then let  $\text{IV}' = 096 - \text{len}(\text{IV}) \parallel \text{IV}$ . Otherwise,  $\text{IV}' = \text{IV}$
2. Let  $P = \text{GCM-ADK}(\text{IV}', C, A, T)$
3. Return P

## Appendix B Digital Signatures

The SNP firmware uses digital signatures to sign objects such as the attestation report and to validate signatures such as the ID block. The supported algorithms and their encodings are described in *Table 146*, *Table 147*, *Table 148*, and *Table 149*.

**Table 146: Encoding for Signing Algorithms**

| Signing Algorithm                        | Encoding |
|------------------------------------------|----------|
| ECDSA P-384 with SHA-384                 | 1h       |
| <i>All other encodings are reserved.</i> |          |

Elliptic curves are defined in *Table 147* below.

**Table 147. ECC Curve Identifier Encodings**

| ECC Curve                                | Encoding |
|------------------------------------------|----------|
| P-384                                    | 2h       |
| <i>All other encodings are reserved.</i> |          |

The ECDSA P-384 with SHA-384 signature format is defined in *Table 148* below.

**Table 148. Format for an ECDSA P-384 with SHA-384 Signature**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name | Description                                                                  |
|-------------|-------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 000h        | 575:0 | R    | R component of this signature. Value is zero-extended little-endian encoded. |
| 048h        | 575:0 | S    | S component of this signature. Value is zero-extended little-endian encoded. |
| 090h–1FFh   |       | –    | Reserved.                                                                    |

The ECDSA P-384 public key format is defined in *Table 149* below.

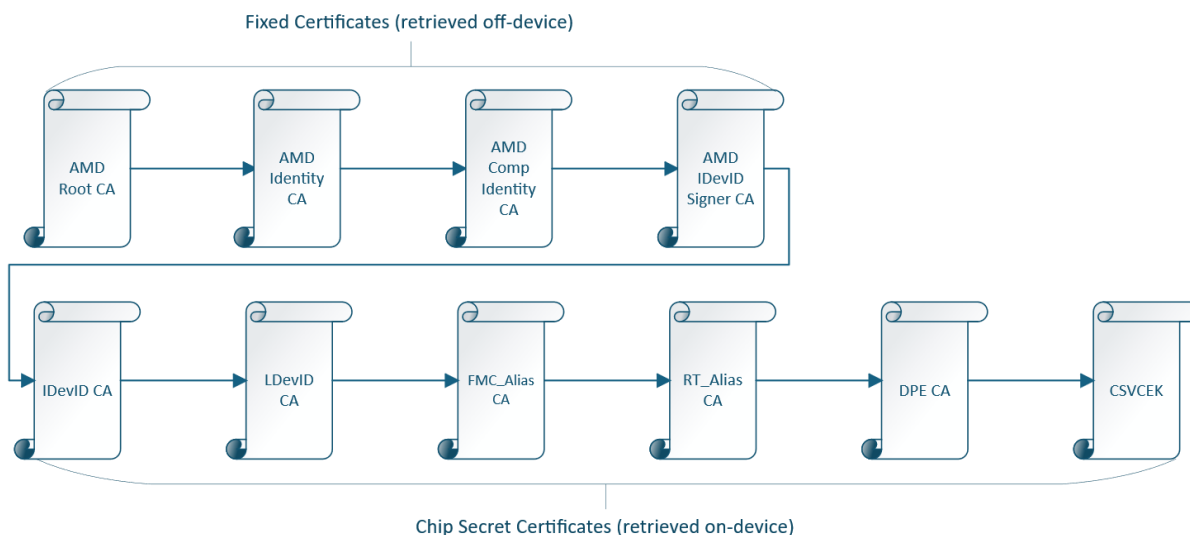
**Table 149. Format for an ECDSA P-384 Public Key**

| Byte Offset | Bits  | Name  | Description                                                                  |
|-------------|-------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 000h        | 31:0  | CURVE | Curve ID. 2h indicates P-384. All other encodings are reserved.              |
| 004h        | 575:0 | QX    | X component of this signature. Value is zero-extended little-endian encoded. |
| 04Ch        | 575:0 | QY    | Y component of this signature. Value is zero-extended little-endian encoded. |
| 094h–403h   |       | –     | Reserved. Must be zero.                                                      |

## Appendix C CSVCEK Certificate Chain

The chip-secret VCEK (CSVCEK) certificate chain can be retrieved on device. This section provides the certificate chain that endorses the CSVCEK and is intended to be used by a verifier when validating the SNP guest report. The certificate chain is shown in *Figure 3*.

**Figure 3. CSVCEK Certificate Chain**



The AMD Root CA through the AMD IDevID Signer CA certificates are fixed per family and are distributed through <https://kds-dev.amd.com/>. The IDevID through DPE certificates follow the formats described in *Caliptra 1.x*.

The CSVCEK certificate format is provided below. The IDevID through the CSVCEK certificates are retrieved on-device through corresponding SNP ABI calls.

**Table 150. CSVCEK Certificate Fields**

| Certificate Field        | Entry                                                                                 |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Version                  | V3                                                                                    |
| Serial Number            | 20-byte value, where first byte is h04 and all remaining bytes are randomly-generated |
| Issuer                   | CN = DPE Leaf, serialNumber =                                                         |
| Signature Algorithm      | secp384r1                                                                             |
| Signature Hash Algorithm | sha384                                                                                |
| Validity                 | Not before: January 1, 2023                                                           |

| Certificate Field       | Entry                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | Not after: December 31, 9999                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Subject                 | CN = SEV-VCEK<br>O = Advanced Micro Devices<br>L = Santa Clara<br>ST = California<br>C = US                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Subject Public Key Info | ECDSA on curve P-384                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Extensions              | See Table 11 of <a href="#">Versioned Chip Endorsement Key (VCEK) Certificate and KDS Interface Specification</a> for prior family extensions.<br>Will re-use the following FW OIDs from Turin: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• teeSPL</li><li>• fmcSPL</li><li>• snpSPL</li></ul> In addition, hwID, structVersion and productName (“Venice”) will be included. |

## Appendix D Certificate Signing Requests

There are two certificate signing requests (CSRs) that are returned in SNP – the LDevID CSR (returned to hypervisor) and the FMC\_Alias CSR (returned to guest). The hypervisor and guest respectively can use these CSRs to replace the CSVCEK certificate chain with their own. The CSR formats are provided below.

**Table 151. LDevID CSR Format**

| CSR Field                | Entry        |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Version                  | V1           |
| Signature Algorithm      | secp384r1    |
| Signature Hash Algorithm | sha384       |
| Subject                  | CN = LDEVID_ |
| Signature                | Null         |

**Table 152. FMC\_Alias CSR Format**

| CSR Field                | Entry                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Version                  | V1                          |
| Signature Algorithm      | secp384r1                   |
| Signature Hash Algorithm | sha384                      |
| Subject                  | CN = Caliptra 1.0 FMC Alias |